Copyrights & Licensing

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 27
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Literal Text
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 10
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 10
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 12
Published by: unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Translation Words
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 14
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament
Date: 2020-02-20
Version: 0.12
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible
Date: 2020-02-20
Version: 2.1.11
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Copyright © 2019 by unfoldingWord

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/ or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: “The original work by unfoldingWord is available from unfoldingword.org/utn”. You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).
If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at unfoldingword.org/contact/.
# Table of Contents

**unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**
- 1 John .................................................................................................................. 7
  - Introduction to 1 John ......................................................................................... 8
  - 1 John 1 ............................................................................................................... 10
  - 1 John 2 ............................................................................................................... 22
  - 1 John 3 ............................................................................................................... 54
  - 1 John 4 ............................................................................................................... 81
  - 1 John 5 ............................................................................................................... 104

**unfoldingWord® Translation Academy** ................................................................. 128
- Abstract Nouns ..................................................................................................... 129
- Active or Passive .................................................................................................. 131
- Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information ................................................... 134
- Double Negatives .................................................................................................. 137
- Doublet .................................................................................................................. 139
- Ellipsis .................................................................................................................... 141
- Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’ .................................................................................. 143
- Forms of You ........................................................................................................ 145
- How to Translate Names ....................................................................................... 146
- Hyperbole .............................................................................................................. 150
- Idiom ...................................................................................................................... 154
- Inclusive and Exclusive “We” .............................................................................. 156
- Metaphor ............................................................................................................... 158
- Metonymy ............................................................................................................. 164
- Parallelism ............................................................................................................. 166
- Personification ...................................................................................................... 169
- Possession ............................................................................................................. 171
- Pronouns .............................................................................................................. 174
- Rhetorical Question ............................................................................................. 176
- Synecdoche .......................................................................................................... 179
- Textual Variants ................................................................................................... 181
- Translating Son and Father .................................................................................. 183

**unfoldingWord® Translation Words** ................................................................. 185
- age, aged ............................................................................................................... 186
- amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, ... .... 187
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather .............................................. 188
- anoint, anointed, anointing .................................................................................. 189
- antichrist .............................................................................................................. 190
- astray, go astray, went astray, lead astray, stray .................................................... 191
- believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief ...................................................... 192
- beloved ............................................................................................................... 194
- blood .................................................................................................................... 195
- bold, boldness, emboldened ............................................................................... 196
- born again, born of God, new birth ...................................................................... 197
brother ................................................. 198
burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances .................................................. 199
Cain ........................................................ 200
call, call out ........................................ 201
children, child, offspring .......................... 203
Christ, Messiah ..................................... 205
clean, wash ........................................... 207
command, commandment ......................... 209
condemn, condemned, condemnation .......... 210
confess, confession .................................. 211
confidence, confident ............................... 212
darkness .................................................. 213
day .......................................................... 214
deceive, deceit, deceiver, deceitful, deception, illusions .......................................................... 215
declare, proclaim, announce ....................... 216
die, dead, deadly, death, ............................ 217
eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever .......... 219
evil, wicked, unpleasant ............................. 221
faith .......................................................... 223
faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy .................................................. 224
false prophet .......................................... 226
fear, afraid, dread ..................................... 227
fellowship .............................................. 228
flesh .......................................................... 229
forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned .......................................................... 230
God .......................................................... 232
God the Father, heavenly Father, Father ......... 234
god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry .......................................................... 236
hand .......................................................... 238
heart .......................................................... 240
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit .......................................................... 241
hope, hoped ............................................. 243
hour ............................................................ 244
iniquity ...................................................... 245
it is written ........................................... 246
Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus ................. 247
joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing .......................................................... 249
judge, judgment ....................................... 251
know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish ...... 253
last day, latter days .................................... 254
lawful, unlawful, not lawful, lawless, lawlessness .......................................................... 255
life, live, living, alive .................................. 257
light, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten .......................................................... 259
like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if .......................................................... 260
love, beloved ........................................... 261
lust, lustful, passions, desires ...................... 263
name
obey, obedient
perfect, perfected, perfection, complete
pray, prayer
promise, promised
propitiation
punish, punished, punishment, unpunished
pure, purify, purification
receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance
reveal, revealed, revelation
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, ...
Satan, devil, evil one
save, saved, safe, salvation
Savior, savior
seed, semen
send, sent, send out
shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
Son of God, the Son
spirit, spiritual
strength, strengthen, strong
stumbling block, stone of stumbling
teach, teaching, untaught
test, tested, testing, testing in the fire
testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
tongue, language
true, truth
understand, understanding, thinking
walk, walked
water
will of God
word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, ...
work, works, deeds
world, worldly

Contributors
unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors
unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors
unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors
unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

1 John
Introduction to 1 John

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of the Book of 1 John

1. Introduction (1:1-4)
2. Christian living (1:5-3:10)
3. The command to love one another (3:11-5:12)
4. Conclusion (5:13-21)

Who wrote the Book of 1 John?

This book does not name the author. However, since early Christian times, most Christians have thought that the Apostle John was the author. He was also wrote of the Gospel of John.

What is the Book of 1 John about?

John wrote this letter to Christians at a time when false teachers were troubling them. John wrote this letter because he wanted to prevent believers from sinning. He wanted to protect believers from false teachings. And he wanted to assure believers that they were saved.

How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, “1 John” or “First John.” Or they may choose a clearer title, such as “The First Letter From John” or “The First Letter John Wrote.” (See: How to Translate Names)

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

Who were the people that John spoke against?

The people John spoke against were possibly those who would become known as Gnostics. These people believed that the physical world was evil. Since they believed Jesus was divine, they denied that he was truly human. This is because they thought God would not become human since the physical body is evil. (See: evil, wicked, unpleasant)

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

What do the words “remain,” “reside,” and “abide” mean in 1 John?

John often used the words “remain,” “reside,” and “abide” as metaphors. John spoke of a believer becoming more faithful to Jesus and knowing Jesus better as if Jesus’ word “remained” in the believer. Also, John spoke of someone being spiritually joined to someone else as if the person “remained” in the other person. Christians are said to “remain” in Christ and in God. The Father is said to “remain” in the Son, and the Son is said to “remain” in the Father. The Son is said to “remain” in believers. The Holy Spirit is also said to “remain” in the believers.

Many translators will find it impossible to represent these ideas in their languages in exactly the same way. For example, John intended to express the idea of the Christian being spiritually together with God when he said, “He who says he remains in God” (1 John 2:6). The UST says, “If we say that we are in union with God,” but translators will often have to find other expressions that communicate these ideas well.

In the passage, “the word of God remains in you” (1 John 2:13), the UST expresses this idea as, “you continue to obey what God commands.” Many translators will find it possible to use this translation as a model.
What are the major issues in the text of the Book of 1 John?

For the following verses, some modern versions of the Bible differ from older versions. The ULT text has the modern reading and puts the older reading in a footnote. If a translation of the Bible exists in the general region, translators should consider using the reading found in those versions. If not, translators are advised to follow the modern reading.

- “And we are writing these things to you so that our joy may be complete” (1:4). Some older versions have, “And we are writing these things to you so that your joy may be complete.”
- “And you all know the truth” (2:20). Other modern versions have, “And you all have knowledge.” Some older versions have, “and you know all things.”
- “and this is what we are!” (3:1). The ULT, UST, and most modern versions read this way. Some older versions omit this phrase.
- “and every spirit that does not acknowledge Jesus is not from God” (4:3). The ULT, UST, and most modern versions have this reading. Some older versions read, “and every spirit that does not acknowledge that Jesus has come in the flesh is not of God.”

For the following passage, translators are advised to translate this as the ULT does. However, if in the translators’ region, there are older versions of the Bible that include this passage, the translators can include it. If it is included, it should be put inside square brackets ([ ]) to indicate that it was probably not in the original version of 1 John.

- “For there are three who bear witness: the Spirit, the water, and the blood. These three are in agreement.” (5:7-8) Some older versions have, “For there are three that bear witness in heaven: the Father, the Word, and the Holy Spirit; and these three are one. And there are three that bear witness on earth: the Spirit, the water, and the blood; and these three are as one.”

(See: Textual Variants)
1 John 1

1 John 1 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This is a letter that John wrote to Christians.

Special concepts in this chapter

Christians and sin

In this chapter John teaches that all Christians are still sinners. But God continues to forgive a Christian's sins. (See: sin, sinful, sinner, sinning and faith and forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned)

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphors

In this chapter John writes that God is light. Light is a metaphor for understanding and righteousness. (See: Metaphor and righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness)

John also writes about people walking in the light or in the darkness. Walking is a metaphor for behaving or living. People who walk in the light understand what is righteous and do it. People who walk in the darkness may not understand what is righteous, and they do what is sinful.
1 John 1:1

General Information:
The apostle John wrote this letter to believers. All instances of “you,” “your,” and “yours” include all believers and are plural. Here the words “we” and “us” refer to John and those who had been with Jesus. In verses 1-2 many pronouns like “that,” “which,” and “it” are used. They refer to “the Word of life” and “the eternal life.” But, since these are names for Jesus, you can use pronouns that refer to a person like “who,” “whom” or “he.” (See: Forms of You and Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’ and Pronouns)

That which...we have heard (ULT)
I, John, am writing to you about the one...we apostles listened to as he taught us (UST)

“which we have heard him teach”

which we have seen...which we have looked at (ULT)
We saw him...We ourselves looked at him (UST)

This is repeated for emphasis. Alternate translation: “which we ourselves have seen” (See: Parallelism)

the Word of life (ULT)
the message...eternal life (UST)

“Jesus, the one who causes people to live forever”

life (ULT)
eternal life (UST)

The word “life” throughout this letter refers to more than physical life. Here “life” refers to being alive spiritually. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- life
- hands

Translation Words - UST

- eternal life
- hand
1 John 1:2

the life was made known (ULT)
he came here to the earth (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God made the eternal life known to us” or “God made us able to know him, who is eternal life” (See: Active or Passive)

we have seen it (ULT)
we have seen him (UST)

“we have seen him”

we bear witness to it (ULT)
that the one whom we have seen is the one (UST)

“we solemnly tell others about him”

the eternal life (ULT)
who has always lived (UST)

Here, “the eternal life” refers to the one who gives that life, Jesus. Alternate translation: “the one who enables us to live forever” (See: Metonymy)

which was with the Father (ULT)
He was previously with his Father in heaven (UST)

“who was with God the Father”

which has been made known to us (ULT)
he came to live among us (UST)

This was when he lived on earth. Alternate translation: “he came to live among us” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- was made known
- which has been made known (2)
- life
- eternal
- we bear witness to it
- Father
- We are announcing

Translation Words - UST

- he came here to the earth
- he came (2)
- he came here to the earth
- who has...lived
- always
• that the one whom we have seen is the one
• his Father in heaven
• we proclaim...clearly
1 John 1:3

General Information:

Here the words “we,” “us,” and “our” refer to John and those who had been with Jesus. (See: Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’)

That which we have seen and heard we declare also to you

“We say to you also what we have seen and heard”

will have fellowship with us...fellowship...our...fellowship...is with the Father (ULT)
may join together with us...The ones with whom...have joined...The ones with whom...we...have joined are God our Father (UST)

“be our close friends. We are friends with God the Father”

fellowship...our...fellowship (ULT)
The ones with whom...have joined...The ones with whom...we...have joined (UST)

It is not clear if John is including or excluding his readers. You may translate this either way.

Father...Son (ULT)
God our Father...Son (UST)

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: Translating Son and Father)

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus Christ
• fellowship
• fellowship
• Son
• Father
• Christ
• we declare

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus the Messiah
• join together
• The ones with whom...have joined
• Son
• God our Father
• the Messiah
• We are proclaiming
1 John 1:4

so that our joy will be complete (ULT)
and that as a result we may be completely joyful (UST)

“to make our joy complete” or “to make ourselves completely happy”

Translation Words - ULT

- joy

Translation Words - UST

- joyful

ULT

4 Also, we are writing these things to you so that our joy will be complete. [11]

UST

4 I am writing to you about these things so that you will be convinced that they are true, and that as a result we may be completely joyful.
1 John 1:5

**General Information:**

Here the words “we” and “us” refer to all believers, including the people to whom John was writing. Unless otherwise stated, that is the meaning for the remainder of this book. (See: *Inclusive and Exclusive “We”*)

**Connecting Statement:**

From here into the next chapter, John writes about fellowship—close relationships with God and other believers.

*God...is light (ULT)*

**He never sins. He is like a brilliant light (UST)**

This is a metaphor that means that God is perfectly pure and holy. Cultures that associate goodness with light may be able to keep the idea of light without explaining the metaphor. Alternate translation: “God is purely righteous like pure light” (See: *Metonymy*)

*in him there is no darkness at all (ULT)*

This is a metaphor that means that God never sins and is not evil in any way. Cultures that associate evil with darkness may be able to keep the idea of darkness without explaining the metaphor. Alternate translation: “in him there is nothing that is evil” (See: *Metaphor*)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- God
- darkness
- light
- are announcing

**Translation Words - UST**

- He...He
- darkness
- never sins...is like a brilliant light
- we are proclaiming
1 John 1:6

walk in darkness (ULT)
if we conduct our lives in an impure manner, that is like living in evil darkness (UST)

Here “walk” is a metaphor for how a person lives or behaves. Here “darkness” is a metaphor for “evil.” Alternate translation: “do what is evil” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT
• fellowship
• truth
• darkness
• walk

Translation Words - UST
• to have joined together
• according to God’s true message
• if we conduct our lives in an impure manner, that is like living in evil darkness
• if we conduct our lives in an impure manner, that is like living in evil darkness

ULT
6 If we say that we have fellowship with him and walk in darkness, we are lying and are not practicing the truth.

UST
6 If we claim to have joined together with God, but if we conduct our lives in an impure manner, that is like living in evil darkness. We are lying. We are not conducting our lives according to God’s true message.
1 John 1:7

we walk in the light as he is in the light (ULT)
living in a pure manner, as God is living in a pure manner in every way, is like living in God's light (UST)

Here “walk” is a metaphor for how a person lives or behaves. Here “light” is a metaphor for “good” or “right.” Alternate translation: “do what is good as God is perfectly good” or “do what is right as God is perfectly right” (See: Metaphor)

the blood of Jesus (ULT)
Jesus died for us (UST)

This refers to the death of Jesus. (See: Metonymy)

Son (ULT)
Jesus (UST)

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

Translation Words - ULT

• of Jesus
• sin
• fellowship
• Son
• cleanses
• blood
• light
• light
• we walk
• as

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus
• God forgives us and accepts us because
• we can join together
• Jesus
• God forgives us and accepts us because
• died for us
• living in a pure manner
• is living in a pure manner in every way
• living in a pure manner
• as...is like living in God's light
1 John 1:8

**General Information:**

Here the words “he,” “him,” and “his” refer to God (1 John 1:5).

**ULT**

8 If we say that we have no **sin**, we are **deceiving** ourselves, and the **truth** is not in us.

**UST**

8 Those who say that they have never **sinned** are deceiving **themselves** and are refusing to believe what **God says about them**.

The truth is spoken of as if it were an object that could be inside believers. Alternate translation: “we do not believe what God says is true” (See: **Metaphor**)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- **sin**
- **truth**
- **we are deceiving**

**Translation Words - UST**

- **sinned**
- are refusing to believe what God says about them
- are deceiving
1 John 1:9

to forgive us our sins and cleanse us from all unrighteousness (ULT)

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. John uses them to emphasize that God will surely forgive our sins. Alternate translation: “and will completely forgive us of what we have done wrong” (See: Parallelism)

Translation Words - ULT

- just
- sins
- sins (2)
- forgive
- unrighteousness
- we confess
- cleanse
- faithful

Translation Words - UST

- what he does is always right
- that...have sinned
- for our sins (2)
- he will forgive
- the guilt of everything we have done wrong
- we admit to him
- will free
- God always does what he says he will do

ULT
9 But if we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us our sins and cleanse us from all unrighteousness.

UST
9 But God always does what he says he will do, and what he does is always right. So if we admit to him that we have sinned, he will forgive us for our sins and will free us from the guilt of everything we have done wrong. Because of that, we should admit to him that we have sinned.
1 John 1:10

If we say that we have not sinned, we make him out to be a liar, and his word is not in us. (ULT)

And we are writing these things to you so that your joy will be complete. (UST)

It is implied that a person who claims to be without sin would be calling God a liar since he said that everyone is a sinner. Alternate translation: “it is the same as calling him a liar, because he said we have all sinned” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Because God says that everyone has sinned, those who say that they have never sinned talk as though God lies! They reject what God says about us! (ULT)

Alternate translation: “we do not understand God’s word nor obey what he says” (See: Metaphor and Metonymy)

Translation Words - UST

• they have...sinned
1 John 2

1 John 2 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Antichrist

In this chapter John writes about both a specific antichrist and many antichrists. The word “antichrist” means “opposed to Christ.” The antichrist is a person who will come in the last days and imitate Jesus' work, but he will do it for evil. Before this person comes, there will be many people who work against Christ; they too are called “antichrists.” (See: antichrist and last day, latter days and evil, wicked, unpleasant)

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

There are several groups of similar metaphors that are used throughout this chapter.

Being in God is a metaphor for having fellowship with God, and God's word and truth being in people is a metaphor for people knowing and obeying God's word.

Walking is a metaphor for behaving, not knowing where one is going is a metaphor for not knowing how to behave, and stumbling is a metaphor for sinning.

The light is a metaphor for knowing and doing what is right, and darkness and blindness are metaphors for not knowing what is right and doing what is wrong.

Leading people astray is a metaphor for teaching people things that are not true. (See: Metaphor)
1 John 2:1

**General Information:**

Here the words “we” and “us” refer to John and all believers. The words “him” and “his” could refer to God the Father or to Jesus. (See: Inclusive and Exclusive “We”)

**Connecting Statement:**

John continues to write about fellowship and shows that it is possible because Jesus goes between believers and the Father.

**children (ULT)**

You who are as dear to me as...children (UST)

John was an elderly man and their leader. He used this expression to show his love for them. Alternate translation: “My dear children in Christ” or “You who are as dear to me as my own children” (See: Metaphor)

I am writing these things (ULT)

I am writing this (UST)

“I am writing this letter”

But if anyone sins (ULT)

But if any of you believers does sin (UST)

“But when anyone sins.” This is something that is likely to happen.

we have an advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ, the one who is righteous (ULT)

remember that Jesus the Messiah, the righteous one, pleads with the Father for him to forgive us (UST)

The word “advocate” here refers to Jesus. Alternate translation: “we have Jesus Christ, the one who is righteous, who speaks to the Father and asks him to forgive us” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Jesus Christ
- the one who is righteous
- you will...sin
- sins
- Father
- children
- Christ

**Translation Words - UST**

- Jesus the Messiah
- the righteous one
- you...sinning
does sin
Father
You who are as dear to me as...children
the Messiah
1 John 2:2

He...is the propitiation for our sins (ULT)
Jesus the Messiah voluntarily sacrificed his own life for us, so that as a result God forgives our sins (UST)

“God is no longer angry with us, because Jesus sacrificed his own life for our sins” or “Jesus is the one who sacrificed his life for our sins, so God is no longer angry with us for our sins”

Translation Words - ULT

• sins
• world
• the propitiation

Translation Words - UST

• for...so that as a result God forgives...sins
• He is...able to forgive the sins of people everywhere
• voluntarily sacrificed his own life

ULT
2 He is the propitiation for our sins, and not for ours only, but also for the whole world.

UST
2 Jesus the Messiah voluntarily sacrificed his own life for us, so that as a result God forgives our sins. Yes, God is able to forgive our sins, but not only ours. He is also able to forgive the sins of people everywhere!
1 John 2:3

we know that we have come to know him (ULT)
we can be sure that we know God (UST)

“We know that we know him” or “We know that we have a good relationship with him”

if we keep his commandments (ULT)
If we obey what he commands us to do (UST)

“if we obey what he commands”

Translation Words - ULT

• commandments
• we keep
• know...we
• we...have come to know

Translation Words - UST

• what...commands us to do
• we obey
• we can be sure
• we know

ULT
3 By this we know that we have come to know him, if we keep his commandments.

UST
3 I will tell you how we can be sure that we know God. If we obey what he commands us to do, that shows us that we are joined together with him.
1 John 2:4

The one who says (ULT)
Those who say (UST)

“Anyone who says” or “The person who says”

I know...God (ULT)
We know God (UST)

“I have a good relationship with God”

does not keep (ULT)
do not obey (UST)

“does not obey” or “disobeys”

his commandments (ULT)
what God commands us to do (UST)

“what God tells him to do”

the truth is not in him (ULT)
They are not conducting their lives according to God’s true message (UST)

The truth is spoken of as if it were an object that could be inside the believers. Alternate translation: “he does not believe what God says is true” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• commandments
• truth
• keep
• I know

Translation Words - UST

• what...commands us to do
• They...conducting their lives according to God’s true message
• do...obey
• We know
1 John 2:5

keeps his word (ULT)

obey...what God commands them to do (UST)

To keep someone's word here is an idiom for to obey. Alternate translation: “does what God tells him to do” (See: Idiom)

in him truly the love of God has been perfected (ULT)

This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) “the love of God” refers to a person loving God, and “perfected” represents completely or fully. Alternate translation: “it is that person who loves God completely” or 2) “the love of God” refers to God loving people, and “perfected” represents completing its purpose. Alternate translation: “God's love has achieved its purpose in that person's life” (See: Possession and Active or Passive)

By this we know that we are in him (ULT)

This is how we can be sure that we are joined with God (UST)

The phrase “we are in him” means that the believer has fellowship with God. Alternate translation: “When we obey what God says, we can be certain that we have fellowship with him” or “By this we know that are joined to God” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• love
• of God
• truly
• keeps
• has been perfected
• we know

Translation Words - UST

• love
• God
• true, truth
• obey
• in every way
• we can be sure
1 John 2:6

**ULT**

he remains in God (ULT)
that we are in union with God (UST)

To remain in God means to continue to have fellowship with God. Alternate translation: “continues to have fellowship with God” or “stays joined to God” (See: Metaphor)

**ULT**

should himself also walk just as he walked (ULT)

Conducting one’s life is spoken of as if it were walking on a path. Alternate translation: “must live as he lived” or “should also obey God just as Jesus Christ did” (See: Metaphor)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- walk
- walked
- just as

**Translation Words - UST**

- we...conduct our lives
- did
- as

**ULT**

6 whoever says that he remains in God should himself also walk just as he walked.

**UST**

6 If we say that we are in union with God, we should conduct our lives as the Messiah did.
1 John 2:7

Connecting Statement:
John gives believers basic principles of fellowship—obedience and love.

Beloved...I am...writing (ULT)
Dear friends...I am...writing...I am writing (UST)
“Your people whom I love, I am” or “Dear friends, I am writing”

I am not writing a new commandment to you, but an old commandment

“I write to you to love one other, which is not a new thing to do but an old commandment that you had heard.” John refers to Jesus’ command to love one another.

from the beginning (ULT)
Here, “beginning” refers to when they decided to follow Christ. Alternate translation: “from when you first believed in Christ” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

The old commandment is the word that you heard.

““The old commandment is the message that you heard”

Translation Words - ULT

• a...commandment
• an...commandment (2)
• commandment
• Beloved

Translation Words - UST

• that...must do something
• something that you have known to do (2)
• This
• Dear friends
1 John 2:8

Yet I am writing a new commandment to you (ULT)
But I will say something again to you on this same topic: I am telling you to do something new...new (UST)

“But in one way the commandment I write to you is a new commandment”

which is true in Christ and in you

“which is true, as shown in Christ’s deeds and your deeds”

the darkness is passing away, and the true light is already shining (ULT)
you are ceasing to do evil and you are doing more and more good...night passes away and day dawns, the true day of the Messiah (UST)

Here “darkness” is a metaphor for “evil” and “light” is a metaphor for “good.” Alternate translation: “because you are ceasing to do evil and you are doing more and more good” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- a...commandment
- true
- true
- darkness
- light

Translation Words - UST

- to do something
- was new...is new
- you are doing more and more good...day dawns, the true day of the Messiah
- you are ceasing to do evil...night passes away
- you are doing more and more good...day dawns, the true day of the Messiah
1 John 2:9

General Information:

Here the word “brother” refers to a fellow Christian.

The one who says that (ULT)
Those who claim (UST)

“Anyone who says” or “Someone who claims.” This does not refer to a specific person.

he is in the light (ULT)
that they are like people who live in the light (UST)

Here to be “in the light” is a metaphor for doing what is right. Alternate translation: “he does what is right” (See: Metaphor)

is in the darkness (ULT)
are...like people who live in darkness (UST)

Here to be “in the darkness” is a metaphor for doing what is evil. Alternate translation: “does what is evil” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• brother
• darkness
• light

Translation Words - UST

• any of their fellow believers
• darkness
• light
1 John 2:10

there is no occasion for stumbling in him (ULT)
they have no reason to sin (UST)

“nothing will cause him to stumble.” The word “stumbling” is a metaphor that means to fail spiritually or morally. Alternate translation: “nothing will cause him to sin” or “he will not fail to do what is pleasing to God” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• The one who loves
• brother
• light
• occasion for stumbling

Translation Words - UST

• love
• their fellow believers
• light
• reason to sin
1 John 2:11

**is in the darkness and walks in the darkness (ULT)**

Here “walk” is a metaphor for how a person lives or behaves. Here to be “in the darkness” and “walks in the darkness” mean the same thing. This brings attention to how evil it is to hate a fellow believer. Alternate translation: “does what is evil” (See: Metaphor and Parallelism)

**He...does not...know where he is going (ULT)**
**They do not know that they will eventually destroy themselves eternally (UST)**

This is a metaphor for the believer who is not living as a Christian should be living. Alternate translation: “he does not know what he should do” (See: Metaphor)

**the darkness has blinded his eyes (ULT)**
**They have become spiritually blind, unaware of spiritual truth (UST)**

“the darkness has made him unable to see.” Darkness is a metaphor for sin or evil. Alternate translation: “sin has made it impossible for him to understand the truth” (See: Metaphor)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- brother
- darkness
- darkness (2)
- darkness
- walks
- He...know

**Translation Words - UST**

- any of their fellow believers
- darkness
- conducting their lives in an impure way (2)
- They have become spiritually blind, unaware of spiritual truth
- conducting their lives in an impure way
- They do...know
1 John 2:12

**General Information:**

John explains why he is writing his letter either to different age groups or to believers with differences in maturity. Try to use similar wording for these sentences, as they are written poetically.

**to you, dear children (ULT)**
**to you whom I love as though you were my own children (UST)**

John was an elderly man and their leader. He used this expression to show his love for them. See how you translated this in 1 John 2:1. Alternate translation: “you, my dear children in Christ” or “you who are as dear to me as my own children” (See: **Metaphor**)

**your sins are forgiven (ULT)**
**God has forgiven your sins (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God forgives your sins” (See: **Active or Passive**)

**because of his name (ULT)**
**because of what the Messiah has done for you (UST)**

“his name” refers to Christ and who he is. Alternate translation: “because of what Christ has done for you” (See: **Metonymy**)

**Translation Words - ULT**
- sins
- are forgiven
- of...name
- dear children

**Translation Words - UST**
- sins
- God has forgiven
- what...has done for you
- whom I love as though you were my own children
1 John 2:13

I am writing to you, fathers (ULT)
I am writing to you believers who are older than the others (UST)

The word “fathers” here is possibly a metaphor referring to mature believers. Alternate translation: “I am writing to you, mature believers” (See: Metaphor)

you know (ULT)
You have known (UST)

“you have a relationship with”

the one who is from the beginning (ULT)
the Messiah, who has always lived (UST)

“the one who has always lived” or “the one who has always existed.” It refers either to “Jesus” or to “God the Father.”

young men (ULT)
young men (UST)

This possibly refers to those who are no longer new believers but are growing in spiritual maturity. Alternate translation: “young believers” (See: Metaphor)

you have overcome (ULT)
you have defeated (UST)

The writer is speaking of the believers’ refusal to follow Satan and of their frustrating his plans as if it were a matter of conquering him. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• evil one
• fathers
• you know

Translation Words - UST

• Satan...evil one
• believers who are older than the others
• You have known
1 John 2:14

you are strong (ULT)
you are strong (UST)

Here “strong” refers not to believers’ physical strength, but to their faithfulness to Christ. (See: Metaphor)

the word of God remains in you (ULT)
you continue to obey what God commands (UST)

“Word of God” here is a metonym for the message from God. The writer refers to the believers’ increased faithfulness to Christ and knowledge of him as if he were speaking of God’s word existing in them. Alternate translation: “God’s message continues to teach you” or “you know the word of God” (See: Metaphor and Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• of God
• word of God
• evil one
• Father
• little children
• strong
• you know
• you know (2)

Translation Words - UST

• God
• what...God...commands
• Satan...evil one
• Father
• little children
• strong
• you know
• you have come to know (2)

ULT

14 I have written to you, little children, because you know the Father. I have written to you, fathers, because you know the one who is from the beginning. I have written to you, young men, because you are strong, and the word of God remains in you, and you have overcome the evil one. (2)

UST

14 And I am writing to you little children, because you know God the Father. I will say it again: I am writing this to you older men because you have come to know the Messiah, the one who has always existed. And I am writing to you young men, because you are strong and you continue to obey what God commands, and because you have defeated Satan, the evil one.
1 John 2:15

Do not love the world nor (ULT)
Do not behave like the people in the world who do not honor God. Do not desire (UST)

In 2:15-17 the word “world” refers to all the things people want to do that do not honor God. Alternate translation: “Do not behave like the people in the world who do not honor God, and do not love” (See: Metonymy)

the things that are in the world (ULT)
the things they want to have (UST)

“the things that those who dishonor God want”

If anyone loves the world, the love of the Father is not in him (ULT)
If anyone lives like they live, they are proving they do not love God our Father (UST)

A person cannot love this world and all that dishonors God and love the Father at the same time. (See: Metaphor)

in...the love of the Father is not...him (ULT)
they want to have...they...are proving they do not love God our Father (UST)

“he does not love the Father”

Translation Words - ULT

- love
- loves
- love
- world
- world
- world (2)
- of the Father

Translation Words - UST

- Do...behave like
- lives like they live
- are proving they do...love
- the people in the world who do not honor God
- they want to have
- lives like they live (2)
- God our Father
1 John 2:16

the lust of the flesh (ULT)
the wrong things that people do (UST)
“the strong desire to have sinful physical pleasure”

the lust of the flesh...the lust...of the eyes (ULT)
the wrong things that people do...the wrong things that people do...all the things that people see and try to obtain for themselves (UST)
“the strong desire to have things that we see”
of life—is not from...Father (ULT)
all the things that they boast about...all these things have nothing to do with our Father in heaven (UST)
“does not come from the Father” or “is not how the Father teaches us to live”

Translation Words - ULT

• of life
• flesh
• world
• world
• Father
• lust
• lust (2)

Translation Words - UST

• all the things that they boast about
• the wrong things that people do
• the wrong things that people do
• world
• to do with our Father in heaven
• the wrong things that people do
• all the things that people see and try to obtain for themselves (2)
1 John 2:17

are passing away (ULT)
will disappear (UST)

“pass away” or “will one day not be here”

Translation Words - ULT

• of God
• world
• will of God
• desire
• forever

Translation Words - UST

• God
• The people in the world who do not honor God
• what...God...wants them to do
• everything that they desire
• forever

ULT
17 The world and its desire are passing away. But whoever does the will of God will remain forever.

UST
17 The people in the world who do not honor God, along with everything that they desire, will disappear. But those who do what God wants them to do will live forever!
1 John 2:18

Connecting Statement:

John warns about those who are against Christ.

Little children (ULT)
You who are very dear to me (UST)

"Immature Christians." See how you translated this in 1 John 2:1.

it is the last hour (ULT)
it is now just before Jesus returns to earth (UST)

The phrase “the last hour” refers to the time just before Jesus returns. Alternate translation: “Jesus will return soon” (See: Metonymy)

many antichrists have come (ULT)
actually, many such persons have...arrived—but they are all against the Messiah (UST)

“there are many people who are against Christ”

have come. By this we know (ULT)
have...arrived...Because of this, we know (UST)

“have come, and because of this we know” or “have come, and because many antichrists have come, we know”

Translation Words - ULT

- the antichrist
- antichrists
- Little children
- Just as
- hour
- hour (2)
- we know

Translation Words - UST

- the person who will pretend to be the Messiah
- such persons...but they are all against the Messiah
- You who are very dear to me
- already
- now just before Jesus returns to earth
- the Messiah will return very soon (2)
- we know
1 John 2:19

They went out from us (ULT)
These people refused to remain in our congregations (UST)

“They left us”

from us, but they were not (ULT)
These people refused to remain in our congregations, but they never really belonged...in the first place (UST)

“They did not really belong to us anyway” or “but they were not really part of our group in the first place.” The reason they were not really part of the group is that they were not believers in Jesus.

For if they had been from us they would have remained with us

“We know this because they would not have left us if they really had been believers”

Translation Words - ULT

• showed

Translation Words - UST

• we clearly saw
1 John 2:20

General Information:

In the Old Testament the word “anointing” referred to pouring oil on a person to set him apart to serve God.

But you have an anointing from the Holy One (ULT)

John speaks of the Holy Spirit as if he were “an anointing” that the people have received from Jesus. The abstract noun “anointing” can be translated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: “But the Holy One has anointed you” or “But Jesus Christ, the Holy One, has given you his Spirit” (See: Metaphor and Abstract Nouns)

the Holy One (ULT)
the Messiah, the one who is holy (UST)

This refers to Jesus. Alternate translation: “Jesus, the Holy One” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- Holy One
- an anointing
- you...know

Translation Words - UST

- Messiah, the one who is holy
- his Spirit
- it is his Spirit who teaches you
1 John 2:21

the truth...no lie is from the truth (ULT)

The abstract noun “truth” can be translated as an adjective. Alternate translation: “what is true...no lie comes from what is true” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

• truth
• truth
• you...know
• you know (2)

Translation Words - UST

• truth about God
• instead, he teaches us only what is true
• you do...know
• you do know (2)

ULT
21 I did not write to you because you do not know the truth, but because you know it and because no lie is from the truth.

UST
21 I am writing this letter to you, not because you do not know the truth about God, but because you do know what it is. You also know that God teaches us nothing that is false; instead, he teaches us only what is true.
1 John 2:22

Who is the liar but the one who denies that Jesus is the Christ (ULT)

“Who is the liar? Anyone who denies that Jesus is the Christ.” John used a question to emphasize who liars are. (See: Rhetorical Question)

the...one who denies that Jesus is...Christ (ULT)

“refuses to say that Jesus is the Christ” or “says that Jesus is not the Messiah”

denies the Father and the Son

“refuses to say the truth about the Father and the Son” or “rejects the Father and the Son.”

Father...Son (ULT)
Father...Son (UST)

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: Translating Son and Father)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Son
- antichrist
- Father
- Christ

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Son
- against the Messiah
- Father
- Messiah
1 John 2:23

who denies the Son...The one who confesses (ULT)
Those who refuse to acknowledge...that Jesus is God’s Son...acknowledge (UST)

“speaks the truth about the Son”

the...have...Father (ULT)
that Jesus is God’s Son are...joined with...Father (UST)

“belongs to the Father”

Translation Words - ULT

- Son
- Son (2)
- The one who confesses
- Father
- Father (2)

Translation Words - UST

- that Jesus is God’s Son
- that the Messiah is the Son of God (2)
- acknowledge
- Father
- Father (2)

ULT
23 Everyone who denies the Son does not have the Father. The one who confesses the Son also has the Father.

UST
23 Those who refuse to acknowledge that Jesus is God’s Son are in no way joined with the Father, but those who acknowledge that the Messiah is the Son of God are also joined with the Father.
1 John 2:24

General Information:
Here the word “you” is plural and refers to the people to whom John wrote as well as all believers. The word “he” is emphatic and refers to Christ. (See: Forms of You)

Connecting Statement:
John reminds believers to continue in what they have first heard.

As for you (ULT)
So, as for you (UST)

This marks John's telling them how they should live as followers of Jesus instead of how those against Christ live.

let what you have heard from the beginning remain in you (ULT)

“remember and believe what you have heard from the beginning.” How they heard it, what they heard, and what “the beginning” means can be made explicit: Alternate translation: “continue to trust what we have taught you about Jesus just as you have trusted since you first became believers” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

what you have heard from the beginning (ULT)
the truth about Jesus the Messiah that you first heard (UST)

“what we taught you about Jesus when you first became believers”

what you have heard from the beginning...in you. If...remains (ULT)
The word “remains” is talking about relationship, not salvation. Alternate translation: “If you continue to trust what we first taught you”

also...will...remain in the Son and in the Father (ULT)

To “remain in” means to continue to have fellowship with. See how translated a similar phrase to “remain in” in 1 John 2:6. Alternate translation: “also continue to have fellowship with Son and with the Father” or “also stay joined to the Son and to the Father” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• Son
• Father

Translation Words - UST

• Son
• Father
1 John 2:25

This is the promise he gave to us—eternal life.

“This is what he promised to give us—eternal life” or “He has promised to cause us to live forever”

life (ULT)
that he will cause us to live (UST)

The word “life” throughout this letter refers to more than physical life. Here “life” refers to being alive spiritually. See how you translated this in 1 John 1:1. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• life
• eternal
• promise
• gave

Translation Words - UST

• that he will cause us to live
• forever
• what
• told

ULT
25 This is the promise that he gave to us—eternal life.

UST
25 And what God told us is that he will cause us to live forever!
1 John 2:26

those who would lead you astray (ULT)
those who want to deceive you concerning the truth about the Messiah (UST)

Here “lead you astray” is a metaphor for persuading someone to believe something that is not true. Alternate translation: “those who want to deceive you” or “those who want to make you believe lies about Jesus Christ” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• those who would lead...astray

Translation Words - UST

• those who want to deceive...concerning the truth about the Messiah
1 John 2:27

Connecting Statement:

Starting in verse 29, John introduces the idea of being born into God's family. The previous verses show that believers continue to sin; this part shows that believers also have the new nature, which cannot sin. It continues to show how believers can recognize each other.

As for you (ULT)
As for you (UST)

This marks John's telling them something else about how they should live as followers of Jesus instead of following those who are against Christ.

the anointing (ULT)
God's Spirit (UST)

This refers to “God's Spirit.” See the note about “anointing” in 1 John 2:20.

as his anointing teaches you everything (ULT)

Here the word “everything” is a generalization. Alternate translation: “because his anointing teaches you everything that you need to know” (See: Hyperbole)

remain in him (ULT)
and remain joined with him (UST)

To remain in someone means to continue to have fellowship with him. See how you translated “remains in God” in 1 John 2:6. Alternate translation: “continue to have fellowship with him” or “stay joined with him” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• true
• anointing
• anointing (2)
• you received
• teach
• teaches
• it has taught
• as
• just as

Translation Words - UST

• the truth
• God's Spirit
• God's Spirit (2)
• you received
• to be...teacher
• is teaching
• he has taught
• like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if
• So continue to live in the way that
1 John 2:28

Now (ULT)
Now (UST)

This word is used here to mark a new part of the letter.

dear children (ULT)
my dear ones (UST)

John was an elderly man and their leader. He used this expression to show his love for them. See how you translated this in 1 John 2:1. Alternate translation: “my dear children in Christ” or “you who are as dear to me as my own children” (See: Metaphor)

he appears (ULT)
he comes back again (UST)

“we see him”

boldness (ULT)
be confident that he will accept us (UST)

having no fear

not be ashamed before him (ULT)
we will not be ashamed when we stand before him (UST)

“not be ashamed in his presence”

in...him...coming (ULT)
joined with...him...when he comes (UST)

“when he comes again”

Translation Words - ULT

• he appears
• dear children
• boldness
• be ashamed

Translation Words - UST

• he comes back again
• my dear ones
• be confident that he will accept us
• we will...be ashamed
1 John 2:29

has been born from him (ULT)
are the ones who have become God’s children (UST)

“has been born of God” or “is God’s child”

Translation Words - ULT

- righteous
- what is right
- has been born
- you know
- you know

Translation Words - UST

- right
- right
- are the ones who have become God’s children
- you know
- you know

ULT

29 If you know that he is righteous, you know also that everyone who does what is right has been born from him.

2:13 [1] Some ancient copies add, I have written to you, little children, because you know the Father here, but the best ancient copies place it in verse 14.

2:14 [2] Some ancient copies place, I have written to you, little children, because you know the Father in verse 13.

2:20 [3] Some other modern versions read, and you have all knowledge. Some older versions read, and you know all things.

UST

29 Since you know that the Messiah always does what is right, you know that all those who continue doing what is right are the ones who have become God’s children.
1 John 3

1 John 3 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Children of God

God created all people, but people can only become children of God by believing in Jesus. (See: believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief)

Cain

Cain was a son of the first man, Adam, and the first woman, Eve. He was jealous of his brother and murdered him. Readers may not know who Cain was if they have not read Genesis. It may help them if you explain this to them.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“To know”

The verb “to know” is used in two different ways in this chapter. Sometimes it is used about knowing a fact, as in 3:2, 3:5, and 3:19. Sometimes it means to experience and understand someone or something, as in 3:1, 3:6, 3:16, and 3:20. Some languages have different words for these different meanings.

“He who keeps God’s commandments remains in him, and God remains in him”

Many scholars believe this is about remaining in God's will and is not about being saved. (See: eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever and save, saved, safe, salvation)
1 John 3:1

Connecting Statement:

In this part John tells the believers about their new nature, which cannot sin.

See what kind of love the Father has given to us (ULT)
Think about how much our Father loves us (UST)

“Think about how our Father loves us so much”

we should be called children of God (ULT)
He allows us to say that we are his children (UST)

“the Father called us his children”

children of God (ULT)
his children (UST)

Here this means people who belong to God through faith in Jesus.

the...For this reason...world does not know us, because it did not know him (ULT)
our...But...people who are unbelievers...have not understood who God is. So...they...do not understand who we are, that we are God's children (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “Because we are the children of God and because the world did not know God, it does not know us” or 2) “Because the world did not know God, it does not know us.”

the world does not know us, because it did not know him (ULT)
But people who are unbelievers have not understood who God is...they do not understand who we are, that we are God's children (UST)

Here “the world” refers to people who do not honor God. What the world did not know can be made explicit: Alternate translation: “those who do not honor God do not know that we belong to God, because they did not know God” (See: Metonymy and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• we should be called
• love
• of God
• world
• Father
• children
• know
• it...know

Translation Words - UST

• He allows us to say that we are
• loves
• his
• people who are unbelievers...they
• Father
• children
• do...understand
• have...understood
1 John 3:2

Beloved...we are (ULT)
Dear friends...we are (UST)

“You people whom I love, we are” or “Dear friends, we are.” See how you translated this in 1 John 2:7.

it has not yet been revealed (ULT)
he has not yet shown us (UST)

This can be stated in active form: Alternate translation: “God has not yet revealed” (See: Active or Passive)

it has...been revealed (ULT)
he has...shown us (UST)

This can mean here either “told,” “demonstrated,” or “shown.”

Translation Words - ULT

• it has...been revealed
• Christ appears
• of God
• children
• Beloved
• like
• just as
• We know

Translation Words - UST

• he has...shown us
• the Messiah comes back again
• God's
• children
• Dear friends
• like
• face to face
• However, we know

ULT
2 Beloved, we are now children of God, and it has not yet been revealed what we will be. We know that when Christ appears, we will be like him, for we will see him just as he is.

UST
2 Dear friends, even though at present we are God's children, he has not yet shown us what we will be like in the future. However, we know that when the Messiah comes back again, we will become like him, because we will see him face to face.
1 John 3:3

Anyone...who has this hope fixed on him purifies himself just as he is pure (ULT)
all those who confidently expect to see the Messiah face to face, will keep themselves from sinning, just like the Messiah, who never sins (UST)

“Everyone who confidently expects to see Christ as he really is will keep himself pure because Christ is pure”

Translation Words - ULT

• purifies
• pure
• hope
• just as

Translation Words - UST

• will keep...from sinning
• who never sins
• who confidently expect
• just like

ULT
3 Anyone who has this hope fixed on him purifies himself just as he is pure.

UST
3 So all those who confidently expect to see the Messiah face to face, will keep themselves from sinning, just like the Messiah, who never sins.
1 John 3:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• sins
• sin
• acts of lawlessness
• lawlessness

Translation Words - UST

• to sin
• that is what sin
• is refusing to obey God's laws
• refusing to obey God's laws

ULT

4 Anyone who sins is also committing acts of lawlessness, for sin is lawlessness.

UST

4 But everyone who continues to sin is refusing to obey God's laws, because that is what sin is, refusing to obey God's laws.
1 John 3:5

Christ was revealed (ULT)
the Messiah came (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Christ appeared” or “the Father revealed Christ” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- was revealed
- sins
- sin
- You know

Translation Words - UST

- came
- the guilt of our sins
- he never sinned
- You know

ULT
5 You know that Christ was revealed in order to take away sins, and in him there is no sin.

UST
5 You know that the Messiah came in order to completely remove the guilt of our sins. You know also that he never sinned.
1 John 3:6

who remains in him (ULT)
Those who...continue doing what the Messiah wants them to do (UST)

To remain in someone means to continue to have fellowship with him. See how you translated “remains in God” in 1 John 2:6. Alternate translation: “continues to have fellowship with him” or “stays joined with him” (See: Metaphor)

Anyone who continues to sin has not seen him, nor has known him (ULT)
But those who repeatedly sin have not understood who the Messiah is, nor have they truly joined with him (UST)

John uses the words “seen” and “known” to say that the person who sins has never met Christ in a spiritual sense. A person behaving according to his sinful nature cannot know Christ. Alternate translation: “No one...has ever truly believed in him” (See: Doublet)

Translation Words - ULT

• will...keep on sinning
• who continues to sin
• has known

Translation Words - UST

• continue sinning repeatedly
• repeatedly sin
• have they truly joined

ULT
6 Anyone who remains in him will not keep on sinning. Anyone who continues to sin has not seen him, nor has known him.

UST
6 Those who continue doing what the Messiah wants them to do, do not continue sinning repeatedly. But those who repeatedly sin have not understood who the Messiah is, nor have they truly joined with him.
1 John 3:7

Dear children (ULT)
So I urge you who are very dear to me (UST)

John was an elderly man and their leader. He used this expression to show his love for them. See how you translated this in 1 John 2:1. Alternate translation: “My dear children in Christ” or “You who are as dear to me as my own children” (See: Metaphor)

do not let anyone lead you astray (ULT)
do not let anyone deceive you by telling you that it is all right to sin (UST)

Here “lead you astray” is a metaphor for persuading someone to believe something that is not true. Alternate translation: “do not let anyone fool you” or “do not let anyone deceive you” (See: Metaphor)

The one who does righteousness is righteous, just as Christ is righteous

“He who does what is right is pleasing to God just as Christ is pleasing to God.”

Translation Words - ULT

- righteousness
- righteous
- righteous (2)
- Dear children
- do not let anyone lead...astray
- just as

Translation Words - UST

- continue doing what is right
- righteous
- righteous (2)
- So I urge you who are very dear to me
- let anyone deceive...by telling you that it is all right to sin
- just like
1 John 3:8

is from the devil (ULT)
is like the devil (UST)

“belongs to the devil” or “is like the devil”

from the beginning (ULT)
since the world began (UST)

This refers to the very earliest time of creation before humans first sinned. Alternate translation: “since the earliest time of creation” (See: Metonymy)

the Son of God was revealed (ULT)
God’s Son became a human being (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God revealed his Son” (See: Active or Passive)

Son of God (ULT)
God’s...Son (UST)

This is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

Translation Words - ULT

• was revealed
• sin
• has sinned
• of God
• Son of God
• works
• devil
• devil
• devil’s (2)

Translation Words - UST

• became a human being
• to sin
• has always been sinning
• God’s
• God’s...Son
• what...has done
• devil
• devil
• devil (2)
1 John 3:9

Connecting Statement:
For now John ends this section on the new birth and the new nature which cannot sin.

Anyone who has been born from God (ULT)
People...if they have become children of God (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Whoever God has made his child” (See: Active or Passive)

God’s seed (ULT)
what he himself is like (UST)

This speaks of the Holy Spirit, whom God gives to believers and who makes them able to resist sin and do what pleases God as if he were a physical seed that is planted in the earth and grows. This is sometimes referred to as the new nature. Alternate translation: “the Holy Spirit” (See: Metaphor)

he has been born of God (ULT)
God has made them his children (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God has given him new spiritual life” or “he is a child of God” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- to sin
- God
- (2)
- who has been born
- he has been born
- seed

Translation Words - UST

- sinning
- continually sin
- God
- God has made them his children (2)
- they have become children
- God has made them his children
- what he himself is like
1 John 3:10

In this the children of God and children of the devil are revealed (ULT)
Those who are God's children are clearly different from those who are the devil's children. The way that we can know who are Satan's children is this (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “This is how we know the children of God and the children of the devil” (See: Active or Passive)

Anyone who does not do what is righteous is not from God, and neither is the one who does not love his brother (ULT)
Those who do not do what is right are not God's children. And those who do not love their fellow believers are not God's children (UST)

The words “from God” are understood in the second part of the sentence. This can also be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “whoever does not do what is righteous is not from God; whoever does not love his brother is also not from God” or “those who do what is righteous are from God, and those who love their brothers are from God” (See: Double Negatives and Ellipsis)

his brother (ULT)
their fellow believers (UST)

Here “brother” means fellow Christians.

Translation Words - ULT

• revealed
• what is righteous
• who...love
• brother
• of God
• God (2)
• of the devil
• children
• children (2)

Translation Words - UST

• clearly different...we can know
• what is right
• those who do not love
• fellow believers
• God's
• God's children...God's children (2)
• devil's...Satan's
• children
children...children (2)
1 John 3:11

**General Information:**

Cain and Abel were the first sons of Adam and Eve, the first man and woman.

**Connecting Statement:**

Here John teaches believers how they can recognize each other by the way they live; he teaches his readers to love each other.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- we should love

**Translation Words - UST**

- we should love
1 John 3:12

We should not be like Cain (ULT)
We should not hate others as did Adam's son, Cain (UST)

“We should not do as Cain did”

brother (ULT)
younger brother...him (UST)

This refers to Cain's younger brother Abel.

For what...did he kill him? Because (ULT)
I will tell you about why...he murdered his brother. It was because (UST)

John uses a question to teach his audience. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “He killed him because” (See: Rhetorical Question)

his works were evil and his brother's righteous (ULT)
Cain habitually behaved in an evil way, and he hated his younger brother because his younger brother behaved in the right way (UST)

The words "works were" are also understood in the second phrase. Alternate translation: “Cain's works were evil and his brother's works were righteous” or “Cain did evil things and his brother did what was right" (See: Ellipsis)

Translation Words - UST

- right way
- younger brother...him
- younger brother
- habitually behaved
- Satan...evil one
- in an evil way
- Adam's son, Cain
- We should...hate others as did
1 John 3:13

my brothers (ULT)

“my fellow believers.” John’s readers were both male and female.

if the world hates you (ULT)
when unbelievers hate you (UST)

Here the word “world” refers to the people who do not honor God. Alternate translation: “if those who do not honor God hate you who do honor God” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• my brothers
• world
• be amazed

Translation Words - UST

• brother
• unbelievers
• You should...be amazed

ULT
13 Do not be amazed, my brothers, if the world hates you.

UST
13 You should not be amazed when unbelievers hate you.
1 John 3:14

**we have passed out of death into life (ULT)**

God has made us to live forever with him (UST)

The conditions of living and of being dead are spoken of as if they were physical locations from which a person could leave and go to. The abstract nouns “life” and “death” can be translated with verbal phrases. Alternate translation: “we are no longer spiritually dead but are spiritually alive” (See: Metaphor and Abstract Nouns)

**life (ULT)**

God has made us to live forever with him (UST)

The word “life” throughout this letter refers to more than physical life. Here “life” refers to being alive spiritually. See how you translated this in 1 John 1:1. (See: Metonymy)

remains in death (ULT)

as a person who is not living in life but is living under the power of death (UST)

“is still spiritually dead”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- life
- we love
- love
- brothers
- of death
- death
- know

**Translation Words - UST**

- God has made us to live forever with him
- we love
- does...love their fellow believer
- our fellow believers
- God has made us to live forever with him
- as a person who is not living in life but is living under the power of death
- know
1 John 3:15

Anyone who hates his brother is a murderer (ULT)

God treats anyone who hates their fellow believers as though they had done something just as bad as committing murder (UST)

John speaks of a person who hates another believer as if he were a murderer. Since people commit murder because they hate other people, God considers anyone who hates to be as guilty as someone who kills a person. Alternate translation: “Whoever hates another believer is as guilty as someone who kills a person” (See: Metaphor)

no murderer has eternal life residing in him (ULT)

“Eternal life” is something God gives believers after they die, but it is also the power God gives believers in this life to help them to stop sinning and to do what please him. Here eternal life is spoken of as if it were a person that could live in someone. Alternate translation: “a murderer does not have the power of spiritual life” (See: Personification)

Translation Words - UST

- life
- eternal
- their fellow believers
- you know
1 John 3:16

because Christ laid down his life for us (ULT) is by remembering that the Messiah died for us of his own free will (UST)

This expression means “Christ willingly gave his life for us” or “Christ willingly died for us” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• life
• our lives
• love
• brothers
• we know

Translation Words - UST

• died...of his own free will
• do anything...even die for them
• how to truly love our fellow believers
• our fellow believers
• we now know

ULT

16 By this we know love, because Christ laid down his life for us. We also ought to lay down our lives for the brothers.

UST

16 The way that we now know how to truly love our fellow believers is by remembering that the Messiah died for us of his own free will. So in the same way, we should do anything for our fellow believers, even die for them.
1 John 3:17

the world’s goods (ULT)  
the things that are necessary for us to live in this world (UST)  
material possessions like money, food, or clothing

the...sees his...brother...in need (ULT)  
the things that are necessary for us to live...we become aware that...any of our fellow believers...do not have what they need (UST)

“realizes a fellow believer needs help”

shuts up his inward parts from him (ULT)  
we refuse to provide for them (UST)

Here “heart” is a metonym for “thoughts” or “emotions.” Here “shuts up his heart of compassion” is a metaphor for no longer showing someone compassion. Alternate translation: “does not show him compassion” or “does not willingly help him” (See: Metonymy and Metaphor)

how does the love of God remain in him (ULT)  
it is clear that we do not love God as we claim to do (UST)

John uses a question to teach his audience. Alternate translation: “God’s love is not in him” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

• love
• brother
• of God
• inward parts
• world’s

Translation Words - UST

• it is clear that we do not love God as we claim to do
• any of our fellow believers
• it is clear that we do not love God as we claim to do
• we refuse to provide
• in this world
Dear children (ULT)
I am saying to you whom I love dearly (UST)

John was an elderly man and their leader. He used this expression to show his love for them. See how you translated this in 1 John 2:1. Alternate translation: “My dear children in Christ” or “You who are as dear to me as my own children” (See: Metaphor)

let us not love in word nor in tongue, but in actions and truth (ULT)
let us not merely say we love each other; let us love each other genuinely by helping each other (UST)

The phrases “in word” and “in tongue” both refer to what a person says. The word “love” is understood in the second part of the sentence. Alternate translation: “do not just say that you love people, but show that you truly love people by helping them” (See: Doublet and Metonymy and Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT
- let us...love
- truth
- actions
- Dear children
- in tongue

Translation Words - UST
- let us...merely say we love each other
- genuinely
- by helping each other
- I am saying to you whom I love dearly
- let us...merely say we love each other
1 John 3:19

Connecting Statement:

Here John probably means that believers’ ability to love God and each other sincerely (1 John 3:18) is a sign that their new life has indeed originated from the truth about Christ.

we are from the truth (ULT)
we are living according to the true message about the Messiah (UST)

“we belong to the truth” or Alternate translation: “we are living according the way Jesus taught us”

we assure our hearts (ULT)
we will not feel guilty (UST)

The word “heart” here refers to feelings. Alternate translation: “we do not feel guilty” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• hearts
• truth
• we assure
• we know

Translation Words - UST

• we will not feel guilty
• to the true message about the Messiah
• we will not feel guilty
• we can be sure
1 John 3:20

if our hearts condemn us (ULT)
although we might feel guilty because we have done wrong (UST)

Here “hearts” is a metonym for people’s thoughts or consciences. For God to be “greater than our hearts” means that God knows more than a person. Therefore he can judge things better than a person can. The effect of this truth is probably that God is more merciful than our consciences would suppose. Alternate translation: “God knows more than we do” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• condemn
• God
• our hearts
• hearts
• he knows

Translation Words - UST

• although we might feel guilty because we have done wrong
• God deserves for us to trust him
• although we might feel guilty because we have done wrong
• God deserves for us to trust him
• He knows
1 John 3:21

Beloved, if (ULT)
Dear friends, if (UST)

“You people whom I love, if“ or “Dear friends, if.” See how you translated this in 1 John 2:7.

Translation Words - ULT

• condemn us
• God
• our hearts
• Beloved
• confidence

Translation Words - UST

• do...accuse us of having sinned
• God
• our minds
• Dear friends
• confidently

ULT
21 Beloved, if our hearts do not condemn us, we have confidence toward God.

UST
21 Dear friends, if our minds do not accuse us of having sinned, then we can pray confidently to God.
1 John 3:22

do the things that are pleasing before him (ULT)
we do what pleases him (UST)

God's opinion is spoken of as if it depends on what he sees happen in front of himself. Alternate translation: “we do what pleases him” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• commandments
• we will receive
• we keep

Translation Words - UST

• what...commands us to do
• we receive it
• we do

ULT
22 Whatever we ask we will receive from him, because we keep his commandments and do the things that are pleasing before him.

UST
22 When we confidently pray to him and request something from him, we receive it because we do what he commands us to do, and because we do what pleases him.
1 John 3:23

This is his commandment: that we should believe... just as he gave us this commandment (ULT)

The abstract noun “commandment” can be stated as “command.” Alternate translation: “This is what God commands us to do: Believe...just as he commanded us to do” (See: Abstract Nouns)

of...Son (ULT)
Son (UST)

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

Translation Words - ULT
- Jesus Christ
- commandment
- this commandment
- love
- of...Son
- we should believe
- name
- Christ
- just as

Translation Words - UST
- Jesus the Messiah
- what...commands us to do
- God commanded...to do
- We must also love
- Son
- We must believe that
- name
- the Messiah
- just as
1 John 3:24

remains in him, and he remains in him (ULT)
are those who are joined with God, and God is joined with them (UST)

To remain in someone means to continue to have fellowship with him. See how you translated “remains in God” in 1 John 2:6. Alternate translation: “continues to have fellowship with him, and God continues to have fellowship with him” or “stays joined with him, and God stays joined with him” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• commandments
• Spirit
• The one who keeps
• we know

Translation Words - UST

• what...commands
• Spirit
• Those who do
• we can be sure

ULT

24 The one who keeps his commandments remains in him, and he remains in him. By this we know that he remains in us, by the Spirit whom he gave to us.

3:1 [1] Some older versions leave out, and this is what we are.

UST

24 Those who do what God commands are those who are joined with God, and God is joined with them. And it is because we have his Spirit, whom he gave to us, that we can be sure that God is joined with us.
1 John 4

1 John 4 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Spirit

This word “spirit” is used in different ways in this chapter. Sometimes the word “spirit” refers to spiritual beings. Sometimes it refers to the character of something. For example “the spirit of the antichrist,” “the spirit of truth,” and “the spirit of error” refer to what is typical of the antichrist, truth, and error. “The Spirit” (written with a capital “S”) and “the Spirit of God” refer to God. (See: antichrist)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Loving God

If people love God, they should show it in the way they live and the way they treat other people. Doing this may assure us that God has saved us and that we belong to him, but loving others does not save us. (See: save, saved, safe, salvation)
1 John 4:1

General Information:

John gives a warning against false teachers who teach against Christ's having had a human body and teachers who talk the way those who love the world talk.

Beloved, do not...believe (ULT)

“You people whom I love, do not believe” or “Dear friends, do not believe.” See how you translated this in 1 John 2:7.

do not believe every spirit (ULT)

Here, the word “spirit” refers to a spiritual power or being that gives a person a message or prophecy. Alternate translation: “do not trust every prophet who claims to have a message from a spirit” (See: Metonymy)

test the spirits (ULT)

you must think carefully about what you hear them teach (UST)

Here, the word “spirits” refers to a spiritual power or being that gives a person a message or prophecy. Alternate translation: “think carefully about what the prophet says” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- world
- spirit
- spirits
- believe
- Beloved
- test
- false prophets

Translation Words - UST

- God
- are teaching it to people
- spirit, spiritual
- you must think carefully about what you hear them teach
- believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief
- Dear friends
- you must think carefully about what you hear them teach
- people who have a false message
1 John 4:2

has come in the flesh (ULT)
came from God to become a human like us (UST)

Here “flesh” represents the human body. Alternate translation: “has come as a human being” or “has come in a physical body” (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT
- Jesus Christ
- of God
- God (2)
- the flesh
- Spirit
- confesses that
- spirit
- Christ
- you will know

Translation Words - UST
- Jesus the Messiah
- of God
- God (2)
- to become a human like us
- Spirit
- affirm that
- Those who
- the Messiah
- to know whether someone is teaching truth that comes from

ULT
2 By this you will know the Spirit of God—every spirit that confesses that Jesus Christ has come in the flesh is from God.

UST
2 I will tell you how to know whether someone is teaching truth that comes from the Spirit of God. Those who affirm that Jesus the Messiah came from God to become a human like us are teaching a message that is from God.
1 John 4:3

and...that...God...This...is the spirit...of the antichrist...you have heard is coming...now is already in the world (ULT)

But...those who...God. They are teachers who oppose the Messiah. You have heard that people like that are coming among us...now they are already here (UST)

“These are prophets opposed to Christ, whom you have heard are coming, and now are already in the world”

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- God
- confess
- world
- spirit
- of the antichrist

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- God
- do...affirm that truth about
- here
- those who
- teachers who oppose the Messiah

ULT

3 and every spirit that does not confess Jesus is not from God. This is the spirit of the antichrist, which you have heard is coming, and now is already in the world. [1]

UST

3 But those who do not affirm that truth about Jesus are not teaching a message from God. They are teachers who oppose the Messiah. You have heard that people like that are coming among us. Even now they are already here.
1 John 4:4

dear children (ULT)

As for you who are very dear to me (UST)

John was an elderly man and their leader. He used this expression to show his love for them. See how you translated this in 1 John 2:1. Alternate translation: “my dear children in Christ” or “you who are as dear to me as my own children” (See: Metaphor)

have overcome them (ULT)

you have refused to believe what those people teach (UST)

“have not believed the false teachers”

the one who is in you is (ULT)

God, who enables you to do what he wants, is (UST)

“God, who is in you, is”

the one who is in the world (ULT)

Two possible meanings are 1) this refers to Satan. Alternate translation: “Satan, who is in the world” or “Satan, who works through those who do not obey God” or 2) this refers to worldly teachers. Alternate translation: “worldly teachers” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• world
• dear children

Translation Words - UST

• belong to God
• world, worldly
• As for you who are very dear to me

ULT

4 You are from God, dear children, and have overcome them, because the one who is in you is greater than the one who is in the world.

UST

4 As for you who are very dear to me, you belong to God, and you have refused to believe what those people teach, because God, who enables you to do what he wants, is greater.
1 John 4:5

They are from the world (ULT)
As for those...they belong with all the people in the world who refuse to honor God (UST)

The words “are from” are a metaphor for “receive their power and authority.” “The world” is a metonym ultimately for “the one who is in the world,” Satan, though it is also a metonym for sinful people who gladly listen to them and so also give them authority. (See: Metonymy)

therefore what they say is from the world (ULT)

“The world” here is a metonym ultimately for “the one who is in the world,” Satan, though it is also a metonym for sinful people who gladly listen to them and so also give them authority. Alternate translation: “therefore they teach what they have learned from sinful people“ (See: Metonymy)

and the world listens to them (ULT)
and those same people listen to them (UST)

The words “the world” are a metonym for people who do not obey God. Alternate translation: “so the people who do not obey God listen to them” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- world
- world (2)
- world

Translation Words - UST

- world who refuse to honor God
- what is false...comes from those same people (2)
- those same people
1 John 4:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- God (2)
- truth
- spirit
- spirit (2)
- of error
- Anyone who knows
- we know

Translation Words - UST

- God
- God
- God (2)
- people who teach truth about God
- people who teach truth about God
- those who deceive others (2)
- those who deceive others
- Whoever knows
- we can distinguish between

ULT
6 We are from God. Anyone who knows God listens to us. He who is not from God does not listen to us. By this we know the spirit of truth and the spirit of error.

UST
6 As for us, we belong to God. Whoever knows God listens to what we teach, but whoever does not belong to God does not listen to what we teach. This is how we can distinguish between people who teach truth about God, and those who deceive others.
1 John 4:7

**General Information:**
John continues to teach about the new nature. He teaches his readers about God's love and loving one another.

**Beloved, let us love (ULT)**
**Dear friends, we must love (UST)**

“You people whom I love, let us love” or “Dear friends, let us love.” See how you translated “Beloved” in 1 John 2:7.

**let us love one another (ULT)**
**we must love each other (UST)**

“believers are to love other believers”

**and everyone who loves is born from God and knows God**

“and because those who love their fellow believers have become God's children and know him”

**for love is from God (ULT)**
**because God enables us to love each other (UST)**

“because God causes us to love each other”

**is born from God (ULT)**
**have become God's children (UST)**

This is a metaphor which means someone has a relationship to God like a child to his father. (See: Metaphor)

**Translation Words - ULT**
- let us love
- love
- who loves
- God
- God (2)
- God
- Beloved
- is born
- knows

**Translation Words - UST**
- we must love
- us to love each other
- those who love their fellow believers
- God enables
- have become God's children (2)
- him
- Dear friends
• have become God's children
• know
1 John 4:8

The person who does not love does not know God, for God is love (ULT)

The phrase “God is love” a metaphor which means “the character of God is love.” Alternate translation: “Those who do not love their fellow believers do not know God because the character of God is to love people” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- who...love
- love
- God
- God
- know

Translation Words - UST

- do...love their fellow believers
- shows his love to people
- God
- God
- do...know
1 John 4:9

Because of this...among us, that God has sent his only Son

“Because of this...among us: God has sent his only Son.” The phrase “Because of this” refers to the phrase “that God has sent his only Son.”

the love of God was revealed among us (ULT)
God has shown us that he loves us (UST)

The noun “love” can be translated as a verb. This phrase can be made active. Alternate translation: “God showed that he loves us” (See: Abstract Nouns and Active or Passive)

his...so that we would live because (ULT)
his...to enable us to live eternally because of him (UST)

“to enable us to live eternally because of what Jesus did”

Translation Words - ULT

- was revealed
- we would live
- love
- of God
- God
- Son
- world
- has sent

Translation Words - UST

- has shown
- to live eternally
- that he loves us
- God
- He
- Son
- to live on the earth
- sent
1 John 4:10

In this is love (ULT)
And God has shown us what it means to truly love another person (UST)

“God showed us what real love is”

that he sent his Son to be the propitiation for our sins (ULT)
he sent his Son to sacrifice himself, in order that he—God—may forgive us when we sin (UST)

Here “propitiation” refers to Jesus’ death on the cross appeasing God’s wrath against sin. The word can be translated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: “he sent his Son to be the sacrifice that appeased his wrath against our sins” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

• sins
• love
• loved
• God
• Son
• to be the propitiation
• that he sent

Translation Words - UST

• when we sin
• to truly love another person
• loved
• God
• Son
• to sacrifice himself, in order that he—God—may forgive
• he sent
1 John 4:11

Beloved, if (ULT)
Dear friends, since (UST)

“You people whom I love, if” or “Dear friends, if.” See how you translated this in 1 John 2:7.

if God so loved us (ULT)
since God loves us like that (UST)

“since God loved us in this way”

we also should love one another (ULT)

“believers are to love other believers”

Translation Words - ULT

• loved
• love
• God
• Beloved

Translation Words - UST

• loves
• to love
• God
• Dear friends
1 John 4:12

God remains in us (ULT)
it is clear that God lives within us (UST)

To remain in someone means to continue to have fellowship with him. See how you translated “remains in God” in 1 John 2:6. Alternate translation: “God continues to have fellowship with us” or “God stays joined to us” (See: Metaphor)

in us...his love is perfected (ULT)
within us...we love others just like he intends...to do (UST)

“God's love is complete in us”

Translation Words - ULT

• we love
• love
• God
• God
• perfected

Translation Words - UST

• we love
• we love others
• God
• God
• just like...intends

ULT
12 No one has ever seen God. If we love one another, God remains in us, and his love is perfected in us.

UST
12 No one has ever seen God. Nevertheless, if we love each other, it is clear that God lives within us and that we love others just like he intends us to do.
1 John 4:13

we remain in him and he in us (ULT)
we are joined with God and that God is joined with us (UST)

To remain in someone means to continue to have fellowship with him. See how you translated “remains in God” in 1 John 2:6. Alternate translation: “we continue to have fellowship with God and he continues to have fellowship with us” or “we stay joined to God and he stays joined to us” (See: Metaphor)

and he in us (ULT)
and that God is joined with us (UST)

The word “remains” is understood from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: “and he remains in us” (See: Ellipsis)

By this we know...that...us...he has given (ULT)
I will tell you how we can be sure...that...us...He has put (UST)

Your translation may be clearer if you omit either “by this” or “because.” Alternate translation: “We know...us because he gave” or “By this we know...us: he gave”

that...us...he has given...some of his Spirit (ULT)

“because he gave us his Spirit” or “because he has put his Holy Spirit in us.” This phrase, however, does not imply that God has less of his Spirit after he has given us some.

Translation Words - ULT

• of...Spirit
• we know

Translation Words - UST

• Spirit
• we can be sure
1 John 4:14

Also, we have seen and have borne witness that the Father has sent the Son to be the Savior of the world

“And we apostles have seen the Son of God and tell everyone that God the Father has sent his Son to save people on this earth”

Father...Son (ULT)
Father...God's Son...him (UST)

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: Translating Son and Father)

Translation Words - ULT

• Son
• have borne witness
• world
• Father
• to be the Savior
• has sent

Translation Words - UST

• God's Son...him
• we solemnly tell others
• the people in the world
• Father
• to save...from suffering eternally for their sins
• sent
1 John 4:15

Whoever confesses that Jesus is the Son of God (ULT)

“Anyone who says the truth about Jesus, that he is the Son of God”

Son of God (ULT)
Son of God (UST)

This is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

of God, God remains in him and he in God (ULT)
God remains joined with...of God.” And so they remain joined with God (UST)

To remain in someone means to continue to have fellowship with him. See how you translated “remains in God” in 1 John 2:6. Alternate translation: “God continues to have fellowship with him and he continues to have fellowship with God” or “God stays joined to him and he stays joined to God (See: Metaphor)

in...and he...God (ULT)
remains joined with...And so they...God (UST)

The word “remains” is understood from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: “and he remains in God” (See: Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• of God
• God
• Son of God
• confesses

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus...He
• of God
• God
• God
• Son of God
• those who say the truth about...They say
1 John 4:16

God is love (ULT)
Because God’s nature is to love people (UST)

This is a metaphor which means “the character of God is love.” See how you translated this in 1 John 4:8. (See: Metaphor)

God...for...the one who remains...this love (ULT)

“those who continue to love others”

remains in God, and God remains in him (ULT)
are joined with God, and God is joined with them (UST)

To remain in someone means to continue to have fellowship with him. See how you translated “remains in God” in 1 John 2:6. Alternate translation: “continues to have fellowship with God, and God continues to have fellowship with him” or “stays joined with God, and God stays joined with him” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- love
- love
- love
- God
- God (2)
- God
- God (3)
- believed
- have known

Translation Words - UST

- loves...loves
- to love people
- to love others
- God...he
- Because God’s nature (2)
- God
- God (3)
- how...we believe that
- have experienced

ULT

16 Also, we have known and believed the love that God has for us. God is love, and the one who remains in this love remains in God, and God remains in him.

UST

16 We have experienced how God loves us and we believe that he loves us. As a result, we love others. Because God’s nature is to love people, those who continue to love others are joined with God, and God is joined with them.
1 John 4:17

**Because of this, this love has been made perfect among us, so that we will have confidence (ULT)**

This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) “Because of this” refers back to 1 John 4:16. Alternate translation: “Because whoever lives in love is in God and God is in him, God has made his love for us complete, and so we may have complete confidence” or 2) “Because of this” refers to “we may have confidence.” Alternate translation: “We are confident that God will accept us on the day he judges everyone, so we know he has made his love for us complete” (See: Active or Passive)

**Because of this, this love has been made perfect among us (ULT)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God has made his love for us complete” (See: Active or Passive)

**Because of this...because as he is, just so are we...world (ULT)**

“because the relationship that Jesus has with God is the same relationship we have with God in this world”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- love
- world
- of judgment
- confidence
- has been made perfect
- as
- day

**Translation Words - UST**

- love others
- world
- God to judge us
- confident that he will not condemn us. We will be confident
- should...completely
- because...as
- when the time comes for
1 John 4:18

Instead, perfect love throws out fear (ULT)
because those who love God completely cannot
possibly be afraid of him (UST)

Here “love” is described as a person with the power to remove fear. God’s love is perfect. Alternate translation: “But when our love is complete, we are no longer afraid” (See: Personification)

fear...because fear has to do with punishment (ULT)

“because we would be afraid only if we thought that he would punish us”

But the one who fears has not been made perfect in love (ULT)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “But when a person is afraid that God will punish him, his love is not complete” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - UST

• We will...be afraid of God
• be afraid of him
• We would be afraid (2)
• those who are afraid of God
• if we truly love him
• love God
• are...loving God (2)
• completely
• certainly...completely
• only if we thought that he would punish us

ULT

18 There is no fear in love. Instead, perfect love throws out fear, because fear has to do with punishment. But the one who fears has not been made perfect in love.

18 We will not be afraid of God if we truly love him, because those who love God completely cannot possibly be afraid of him. We would be afraid only if we thought that he would punish us. So those who are afraid of God certainly are not loving God completely.
1 John 4:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• love
• loved

Translation Words - UST

• love God and our fellow believers
• loved

ULT
19 We love because God first loved us.

UST
19 We love God and our fellow believers because God loved us first.
1 John 4:20

God...hates his...brother (ULT)
God...hate...a fellow believer (UST)

“hates a fellow believer”

the one...who does not love his brother, whom he has seen, cannot love God, whom he has not seen (ULT)

If two negative statements in a row are confusing, this can be translated differently. Alternate translation: “the one who hates his brother, whom he has seen, cannot love God, whom he has not seen” (See: Double Negatives)

Translation Words - ULT

- I love
- who...love
- love
- brother
- brother (2)
- God
- God

Translation Words - UST

- I love
- Those who do not love
- be loving
- a fellow believer
- one of their fellow believers (2)
- God
- God

ULT

20 If anyone says, “I love God” but hates his brother, he is a liar. For the one who does not love his brother, whom he has seen, cannot love God, whom he has not seen.

UST

20 So those who say “I love God” but hate a fellow believer are lying. Those who do not love one of their fellow believers, whom they have seen, certainly cannot be loving God, whom they have not seen.
1 John 4:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- commandment
- the one who loves
- love
- brother
- God

Translation Words - UST

- what...has commanded us
- If we love
- we must...love
- our fellow believers
- him

ULT

21 Also, this is the commandment we have from him, that the one who loves God must also love his own brother.

4:3 (f) Some older versions read, and every spirit that does not acknowledge that Jesus has come in the flesh is not from God. This is the spirit of the antichrist, which you have heard is coming, and now is already in the world.

UST

21 Keep in mind that this is what God has commanded us: If we love him, we must also love our fellow believers.
1 John 5

1 John 5 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Children born from God

When people believe in Jesus, God makes them his children and gives them eternal life. (See: believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief)

Christian living

People who believe in Jesus should obey God's commands and love his children.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Death

When John writes about death in this chapter, he refers to physical death. (See: die, dead, deadly, death.)

“the whole world lies in the power of the evil one”

The phrase “the evil one” refers to Satan. God has allowed him to rule the world, but ultimately God is in control over everything. God keeps his children safe from the evil one. (See: Satan, devil, evil one)
1 John 5:1

General Information:
John continues to teach his readers about God's love and the love believers are to have because they have this new nature from God.

is born from God (ULT)
are children of God, born from God (UST)

“is a child of God”

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• who believes
• loves
• God
• Christ
• is born
• a father
• child born

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus
• whoever loves
• loves
• God...God
• All those who believe
• Messiah
• are children...born
• anyone who is a father
• child

ULT
1 Everyone who believes that Jesus is the Christ is born from God, and everyone who loves a father also loves the child born from him.

UST
1 All those who believe that Jesus is the Messiah are children of God, born from God. And whoever loves anyone who is a father certainly loves his child also.
1 John 5:2

Because of this we know that we love God's children, when we love God and do his commandments.

“When we love God and do what he commands, then we know that we love his children”

Translation Words - ULT

- commandments
- we love
- we love (2)
- God's
- God
- children
- do
- we know

Translation Words - UST

- what...commands us to do
- we truly love
- we love (2)
- God's
- God
- children
- do
- We can be sure

ULT

2 Because of this we know that we love God's children, when we love God and do his commandments.

UST

2 We can be sure that we truly love God's children when we love God and do what he commands us to do.
1 John 5:3

For this is love for God: that we keep his commandments (ULT)
I am saying this because what loving God really means is that we do what he commands (UST)

“Because when we do what he commands, that is true love for God”

his...commandments...are not burdensome (ULT)
he...it is not difficult to do what...commands (UST)

“what he commands is not difficult”

burdensome (ULT)
difficult to do (UST)

“heavy” or “crushing” or “difficult”

Translation Words - ULT

• commandments
• commandments
• love
• for God
• burdensome
• we keep

Translation Words - UST

• what...commands
• what...commands
• loving
• God
• difficult to do
• we do
1 John 5:4

everyone who is born from God overcomes (ULT)
All of us whom God has caused to become his children
have been able to refuse to do (UST)
“all children of God overcome”

overcomes the world (ULT)
have been able to refuse to do what unbelievers want
us to do (UST)
“has victory over the world,” “succeeds against the world,” or “refuses
to do the evil things unbelievers do”

the world (ULT)
what unbelievers want us to do (UST)

This passage uses “the world” to refer to all the sinful people and the
evil systems in the world. Alternate translation: “everything in the world that is against God” (See: Metonymy)

And this is the victory that has overcome the world, even our faith

“And this is what gives us the power to resist whatever would lead us to sin against God: our faith” or “And it is our
faith that gives us the power to resist whatever would lead us to sin against God”

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• world
• world (2)
• even...faith
• who is born

Translation Words - UST

• God
• what unbelievers want us to do
• to do wrong (2)
• because...trust in the Messiah
• whom...has caused to become his children
1 John 5:5

who is...the one who overcomes the world (ULT)
Who is...the person who is stronger than everything that is against God (UST)

John used this question to introduce something he wanted to teach. Alternate translation: “I will tell you who overcomes the world.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

The one who believes that Jesus is the Son of God

This does not refer to a specific person but to anyone who believes this. Alternate translation: “Anyone who believes that Jesus is the Son of God”

Son of God (ULT)
Son of God (UST)

This is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- of God
- Son of God
- world
- the one who believes

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- of God
- Son of God
- everything that is against God
- anyone who believes
1 John 5:6

Connecting Statement:
John teaches about Jesus Christ and what God said about him.

This is the one who came by water and blood: Jesus Christ (ULT)
Think about Jesus the Messiah. He is the one who came to earth from God. God showed that he had truly sent Jesus when John baptized Jesus in water, but also when Jesus’ blood flowed from his body when he died...Jesus the Messiah came from God (UST)

“Jesus Christ is the one who came by water and blood.” Here “water” is probably a metonym for the baptism of Jesus, and “blood” stands for Jesus’ death on the cross. Alternate translation: “God showed that Jesus Christ is his son at Jesus’ baptism and his death on the cross” (See: Metonymy)

He came not only by water, but also by water and by blood (ULT)
Here “water” is probably a metonym for the baptism of Jesus, and “blood” stands for Jesus’ death on the cross. Alternate translation: “God did not show us Jesus was his son just through his baptism, but through his baptism and his death on the cross” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT
- Jesus Christ
- the one who testifies
- Spirit
- Spirit (2)
- truth
- blood
- blood
- Christ
- water
- water
- water (2)

Translation Words - UST
- Jesus the Messiah
- declares...that
- Spirit
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit (2)
- truthfully
- Jesus’ blood flowed from his body when he died
- blood
- the Messiah
- John baptized Jesus in water
- water
• water (2)
1 John 5:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• who bear witness

Translation Words - UST

• three witnesses who give testimony

ULT
7 For there are three who bear witness:

UST
7 These three are like three witnesses who give testimony:
1 John 5:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Spirit
- blood
- water

Translation Words - UST

- Spirit
- blood
- water

ULT

8 the Spirit, and the water, and the blood. These three are in agreement. [1]

UST

8 God's Spirit, the water and the blood. These three all tell us the same thing.
1 John 5:9

If we receive the witness of men, the witness of God is greater (ULT)

We usually believe what other people tell us. But we can certainly trust much more in what God says (UST)

The translator can state more clearly the implied reason about why we should believe what God says: Alternate translation: “If we believe what people say, then we should believe what God says because he always tells the truth” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

we receive the witness of men (ULT)

We...believe what other people tell us. But we can certainly trust...in (UST)

The idiom to “receive the witness” means to believe what another person testifies concerning something that he has seen. The abstract noun “witness” can be translated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: “believe what men testify” or “believe what men say about what they have seen” (See: Idiom and Abstract Nouns)

the witness of God is greater (ULT)

much more...what God says (UST)

the witness of God is more important and more reliable

Son (ULT)

Son (UST)

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

Translation Words - ULT

• of God
• of God (2)
• Son
• witness
• witness
• testimony (2)
• he has borne witness
• we receive

Translation Words - UST

• God
• And...certainly (2)
• Son
• We...believe what...tell us
• what...says
• And...certainly (2)
• he has...testified
• But we can certainly trust...in
1 John 5:10

Anyone who believes in the Son of God has the testimony in himself (ULT)

Those who trust in the Son of God know within their inner beings what is true about him (UST)

“Whoever believes in Jesus knows for sure Jesus is the Son of God”

has made him out to be a liar (ULT)

call him a liar (UST)

“has called God a liar”

Anyone who believes in...of God...the testimony...because he has not believed...that...God...has given concerning his...Son (ULT)

Those who trust in...of God...know within their inner beings what is true about him...because they have refused to believe what...God...has testified about his...Son (UST)

“because he has not believed that God has told the truth about his Son”

Translation Words - ULT

• of God
• God
• Son of God
• Son
• testimony
• witness (2)
• has given
• Anyone who believes
• who...believe (2)
• he has...believed

Translation Words - UST

• of God
• God
• God
• Son of God
• Son
• know within their inner beings what is true about him
• what...says (2)
• what...has testified
• Those who trust
• But those who do not believe (2)
• they have...to believe
1 John 5:11

This is the witness (ULT)

“This is what God says”

life (ULT)
life (UST)

The word “life” throughout this letter refers to more than physical life. Here “life” refers to being alive spiritually. See how you translated this in 1 John 1:1. (See: Abstract Nouns)

This…the...life...is in his Son (ULT)

“This life is through his Son” or “we will live forever if we are joined with his Son” or “we will live forever if we are united with his Son”

Son (ULT)
Son (UST)

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

Translation Words - ULT

- life
- eternal
- God
- Son
- witness

Translation Words - UST

- life
- We will live forever
- eternal
- God...I
- Son
- what...says to us
1 John 5:12

The one who has the Son has life. The one who does not have the Son of God does not have life (ULT)
Those who are joined with God’s Son will live forever with God. Those who are not joined with him will not live forever (UST)

Being in a close relationship to the Son is spoken of as having the Son. Alternate translation: “He who believes in the Son of God has eternal life. He who does not believe in the Son of God does not have eternal life” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• life
• life
• of God
• Son
• Son of God

Translation Words - UST

• will live forever with God
• live forever
• him
• Son
• him
1 John 5:13

General Information:
This begins the end of John’s letter. He tells his readers the last purpose for his letter and gives them some final teachings.

ult 13 I have written to you these things so that you will know that you have eternal life—to you who believe in the name of the Son of God.

ust 13 I have written this letter to you who believe that Jesus is the Son of God, in order that you may know that you will live forever.

these things (ULT)
this letter (UST)
“this letter”
to you who believe in the name of the Son of God (ULT)
who believe that Jesus is the Son of God (UST)

Here “name” is a metonym for the Son of God. Alternate translation: “to you who trust in the Son of God” (See: Metonymy)

of the Son of God (ULT)
the Son of God (UST)

This is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

Translation Words - ULT

• life
• eternal
• of God
• Son of God
• to you who believe
• name
• I have written
• you will know

Translation Words - UST

• you will live
• forever
• of God
• Son of God
• who believe
• that Jesus is
• I have written
• you may know
1 John 5:14

this is the confidence that we have before him, that
(ULT)
we are very confident that (UST)

The abstract noun “confidence” can be stated as “confident.”
Alternate translation: “we are confident in God’s presence because
we know that” (See: Abstract Nouns)

if we ask anything according to his will (ULT)
when we ask him to do anything he approves of (UST)

“If we ask for the things that God desires”

Translation Words - ULT

• his will
• confidence

Translation Words - UST

• he...approves of
• we are very confident

ULT

14 Also, this is the confidence that we have before him, that if we ask anything according to his will, he hears us.

UST

14 Because we are joined with him, we are very confident that he hears us when we ask him to do anything he approves of.
1 John 5:15

we know that...we have the requests which we have asked of him (ULT)
we know that...we will receive whatever we asked from him (UST)

“we know that we will receive that for which we have asked God”

Translation Words - ULT

• we know
• we know (2)

Translation Words - UST

• we know
• then we can be sure (2)
1 John 5:16

**ULT**

16 If anyone sees his brother commit a sin that does not result in death, he must pray, and God will give him life. I refer to those whose sin does not result in death. There is a sin that results in death; I am not saying that he should pray about that.

**UST**

16 Suppose you see one of our fellow believers sinning in a way that would not separate them from God, and when you see sinning, you should ask God and pray that God will give that person life—that is, to that person who is not committing a sin that would separate him from God. But there are some people who sin in a way that causes them to be separated from God forever. I am not saying you should ask God to help people who sin in that way.

---

**Translation Words - ULT**

- life
- commit
- a sin
- I refer to those whose sin
- a sin
- brother
- he should pray
- in death
- in death (2)
- in death (3)

**Translation Words - UST**

- life
- sinning
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- is...committing a sin
- some people who sin
- one of our fellow believers
- you should ask God to help people who sin in that way
- in a way that would...separate them from God
- that would separate him from God (2)
- in a way that causes them to be separated from God forever (3)
1 John 5:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- sin
- sin (2)
- unrighteousness
- in death

Translation Words - UST

- a sin against God
- every bad thing we do (2)
- that is wrong
- can separate us from God forever

ULT
17 All unrighteousness is sin, but there is sin that does not result in death.

UST
17 Everything that is wrong is a sin against God, but not every bad thing we do can separate us from God forever.
1 John 5:18

Connecting Statement:

John closes his letter, reviewing what he has said about the new nature of believers, which cannot sin, and he reminds them to keep themselves from idols.

who is born...does not...evil one...harm him (ULT)
is a child...not...Satan...evil one, does...harm him (UST)

The phrase “the evil one” refers to Satan, the devil.

Translation Words - ULT

- sin
- God
- God (2)
- evil one
- who is born
- the one who was born
- We know

Translation Words - UST

- he does...keep sinning again and again
- of God
- of God (2)
- Satan...evil one
- is a child
- the Son
- We know

ULT

18 We know that everyone who is born from God does not sin. But the one who was born from God keeps him safe, and the evil one cannot harm him.

UST

18 We know that if a person is a child of God, he does not keep sinning again and again. Instead, the Son of God protects him so that Satan, the evil one, does not harm him.
1 John 5:19

the whole world lies in the power of the evil one (ULT)
the whole world is under the control of the evil one (UST)

Lying in someone's power represents being controlled or ruled by him. Alternate translation: "the whole world is controlled by the evil one" (See: Metaphor)

the whole world (ULT)
the whole world (UST)

Here “world” is a way in which some biblical writers refer to the people living in the world who are in rebellion against God and to the world system that is affected in every way by the corrupting power of sin. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• the...world
• the power of the evil one
• We know

Translation Words - UST

• God
• world
• evil one
• We know...we know
1 John 5:20

Son of God (ULT)
Son of God (UST)

This is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

has given us understanding (ULT)
has enabled us to understand (UST)

“has enabled us to understand the truth”

we are in the one who is true (ULT)
we are joined to him who is true (UST)

Being “in” someone represents having a close relationship with him, that is being united to him or belonging to him. The phrase “him who is true” refers to the true God, and the phrase “in his Son Jesus Christ” explains how we are in him who is true. Alternate translation: “we are united to him who is true by being united to his Son Jesus Christ” (See: Metaphor)

him who is true (ULT)
the truth (UST)

“the true one” or “the real God”

the...This one is...true God (ULT)
the...Jesus the Messiah is...truly...God...he is the one who (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “This one” refers to Jesus Christ, or 2) “This one” refers to the one true God.

and eternal life (ULT)
and...enables us to have eternal life (UST)

He is called “eternal life” because he gives us eternal life. Alternate translation: “and the one who gives eternal life” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- life
- eternal
- Jesus Christ
- of God
- God
- Son of God
- Son
- him who is true
- the one who is true
- true
- Christ
- understanding
we know
we may know

Translation Words - UST

- enables us to have...life
- eternal
- Jesus the Messiah
- of God
- God
- Son of God
- Son
- truth
- to him who is true
- truly
- the Messiah
- to understand
- We also know
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
1 John 5:21

Children (ULT)
I say to you who are very dear to me (UST)

John was an elderly man and their leader. He used this expression to show his love for them. See how you translated this in 1 John 2:1. Alternate translation: “My dear children in Christ” or “You who are as dear to me as my own children” (See: Metaphor)

keep yourselves from idols (ULT)
guard yourselves from worshiping gods that have no real power (UST)

“stay away from idols” or “do not worship idols”

Translation Words - ULT

• idols
• Children

Translation Words - UST

• worshipping gods that have no real power
• I say to you who are very dear to me

ULT

21 Children, keep yourselves from idols.

5:8 [?] Some older versions read, For there are three that bear witness in heaven: the Father, the Word, and the Holy Spirit. These three are one; and there are three that bear witness on earth: the Spirit, the water, and the blood; and these three are as one. However, the best copies do not have this reading.

UST

21 I say to you who are very dear to me, guard yourselves from worshipping gods that have no real power.
Abstract Nouns

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. Abstract Nouns are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. It is a way of giving names to actions or qualities so that people who speak these languages can talk about them as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, “I believe in the forgiveness of sin.” But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, they may not have the two abstract nouns “forgiveness” and “sin,” but they would express the same meaning in other ways. They would say, for example, “I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned,” using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, “What is its weight?” could be expressed as “How much does it weigh?” or “How heavy is it?”

Examples from the Bible

...from *childhood* you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

The abstract noun “childhood” refers to when someone is a child.

But godliness with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns “godliness” and “contentment” refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun “gain” refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today salvation has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun “salvation” here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The abstract noun “slowness” refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.
Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

Ever since you were a child you have known the sacred writings.

But godliness with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

But being godly and content is very beneficial.
But we benefit greatly when we are godly and content.
But we benefit greatly when we honor and obey God and when we are happy with what we have.

Today salvation has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

Today the people in this house have been saved...
Today God has saved the people in this house...

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness to be. (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider moving slowly to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them.

(Go back to: 1 John 2:20; 2:21; 3:14; 3:23; 4:9; 4:10; 5:9; 5:11; 5:14; 5:16)
Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- **ACTIVE**: *My father* built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE**: *The house* was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

- **ACTIVE**: *My father* built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE**: *The house* was built by my father in 2010.
- **PASSIVE**: *The house* was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

Reasons this is a translation issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

Purposes for the passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples from the Bible

> And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king’s servants *were killed*, and your servant Uriah the Hittite *was killed*, too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)
This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal was broken down... (Judges 6:28 ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea (Luke 17:2 ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

**Translation Strategies**

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like “they” or “people” or “someone.”
3. Use a different verb.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

The king's servants gave Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like “they” or “people” or “someone.”

It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea. (Luke 17:2 ULT)

It would be better for him if they were to put a millstone around his neck and throw him into the sea.

It would be better for him if someone were to put a heavy stone around his neck and throw him into the sea.

(3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

He received a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.
Next we recommend you learn about:

Abstract Nouns
[[rc://en/tg/ta/man/translate/figs-order]]

(Go back to: 1 John 1:2; 2:5; 2:12; 3:2; 3:5; 3:8; 3:9; 3:10; 4:9; 4:17; 4:18)
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

• **Assumed knowledge** is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.

• When **the speaker does give the audience information**, he can do so in two ways:
  - **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
  - **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

**Description**

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. **Implicit information** is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this **implicit information** by combining what they already know (assumed knowledge) with the **explicit information** that the speaker tells them directly.

**Reasons this is a translation issue**

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker’s message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different than the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the **assumed knowledge** or the **implicit information** is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

**Examples from the Bible**

> Then a scribe came to him and said, “Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go.” Jesus said to him, “Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here “I am the Son of Man” but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

> Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But...
Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all assumed knowledge.

An important piece of implicit information here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged because they did not repent.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was assumed knowledge that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is implicit information that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:20 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes to live in, and the birds of the sky have nests to live in, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep.”

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you. (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.

...it will be more tolerable for those cities Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked, at the day of judgment than for you.

or:

...it will be more tolerable for those wicked cities Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands
when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness when they eat.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Then a scribe came to him and said, “Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go.” Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:19, 20 ULT) - The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, he would have to live like Jesus without a house.

Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but I, the Son of Man, have no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live.”

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

At the day of judgment, God will punish Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked, less severely than he will punish you.

or:

At the day of judgment, God will punish you more severely than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.
Double Negatives

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of “not.” Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning “not.” Examples in English are “no,” “not,” “none,” “no one,” “nothing,” “nowhere,” “never,” “nor,” “neither,” and “without.” Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean “not” such as the underlined parts of these words: “un happy,” “im possible,” and “use less.” Some other kinds of words also have a negative meaning, such as “lack” or “reject,” or even “fight” or “evil.”

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each have a negative meaning.

It is not that we do not have authority… (2 Thessalonians 3:9 ULT)
And this better confidence did not happen without the taking of an oath,… (Hebrews 7:20 ULT.)
Be sure of this—wicked people will not go unpunished (Proverbs 11:21 ULT)

Reason this is a translation issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

• In some languages, such as Spanish, a double negative emphasizes the negative. The following Spanish sentence No vi a nadie is literally, “I did not see no one”. It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one”. The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, “I did not see anyone”.
• In some languages, a second negative cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, “He is not unintelligent” means “He is intelligent”.
• In some languages the double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” means, “He is somewhat intelligent”.
• In some languages, such as the languages of the Bible, the double negative can create a positive sentence, and often strengthens the statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” can mean “He is intelligent” or “He is very intelligent”.

To translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know both what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

Examples from the Bible

...in order not to be unfruitful. (Titus 3:14 ULT)

This means “so that they will be fruitful”.

All things were made through him and without him there was not one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

By using a double negative, John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything. The double negative makes a stronger statement than the simple positive.
Translation Strategies

If double negatives are natural and are used to express the positive in your language, consider using them. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

1. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
2. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely” or “absolutely.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

   For we do not have a high priest who cannot feel sympathy for our weaknesses. (Hebrews 4:15 ULT)

   “For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses.”

   ...in order not to be unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14 ULT)

   “…so that they may be fruitful.”

(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely” or “absolutely.”

   Be sure of this—wicked people will not go un punished... (Proverbs 11:21 ULT)

   “Be sure of this—wicked people will certainly be punished...”

All things were made through him and without him there was not one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

   “All things were made through him. He made absolutely everything that has been made.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]

(Go back to: 1 John 3:10; 4:20)
**Doublet**

**Description**

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike Hendiadys, in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

**Reason this is a translation issue**

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

**Examples from the Bible**

- King David was *old* and *advanced in years*. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)
- The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean that he was “very old.”
- ...he attacked two men *more righteous* and *better* than himself... (1 Kings 2:32 ULT)
  - This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.
- You have decided to prepare *false* and *deceptive* words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)
  - This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.
- ...as of a lamb *without blemish* and *without spot*. (1 Peter 1:19 ULT)
  - This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect--not even one.

**Translation Strategies**

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words or phrases.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

**Translation Strategies Applied**

(1) Translate only one of the words.

- You have decided to prepare *false* and deceptive words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)
  - “You have decided to prepare *false* things to say.”
(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

King David was old
and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

“King David was very old.”

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

...a lamb without blemish

and without spot... (1 Peter 1:19 ULT) - English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

“...a lamb without any blemish at all...”

(Go back to: 1 John 3:6; 3:18)
Ellipsis

Description

Ellipsis is what happens when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words from a sentence that it normally should have to be a complete sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.

(Psalm 1:5)

There is ellipsis in the second part because “nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would be:

...nor will sinners stand in the assembly of the righteous.

There are two types of ellipsis.

1. A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.
2. An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage, or from the nature of the situation.

Reason this is a translation issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

Examples from the Bible

Relative Ellipsis

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and he makes Sirion skip like a young ox.

But if we are afflicted, for your comfort and salvation; if we are comforted, for your comfort,...

(2 Corinthians 1:6)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:
But if we are afflicted, we are afflicted for your comfort and salvation; if we are comforted, we are comforted for your comfort,...

Absolute Ellipsis

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, that I might receive my sight.” (Luke 18:40-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

   “Lord, I want you to heal me so that I might receive my sight.”

To Titus...Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior. (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

   To Titus...May you receive grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our savior.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

   ...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5)

   ...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and sinners will not stand in the assembly of the righteous.

   ...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, that I might receive my sight.” (Luke 18:40-41)

   ...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, I want you to heal me that I might receive my sight.”

   He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox.

   He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and he makes Sirion skip like a young ox.

(Go back to: 1 John 3:10; 3:12; 3:18; 4:13)
Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’

Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an inclusive form that means “I and you” and an exclusive form that means “I and someone else but not you”. The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us”, “our”, “ours”, and “ourselves”. Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we”, then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of “we” to use.

Examples from the Bible

They said, “We have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish, unless we went and bought food for all this crowd of people.” (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the first clause, the disciples are telling Jesus how much food they have among them, so this “we” could be the inclusive form or the exclusive form. In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food, so that “we” would be the exclusive form, since Jesus would not go to buy food.

we have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to us (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

...the shepherds said one to each other, “Let us now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to us.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us”, they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let us go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)
When Jesus said “us”, he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

(Next we recommend you learn about: [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-gendernotations]]

(Go back to: 1 John 1:1; 1:3)
Forms of You

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The singular form refers to one person, and the plural form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a dual form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the formal form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the informal form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_youform.

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of “You” - Formal or Informal

(Go back to: 1 John 1:1; 2:24)
How to Translate Names

Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this Melchizedek, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2 ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek's name and title, because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons this is a translation issue

• Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
• Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
• Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
• Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples from the Bible

You went over the Jordan and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me”.

She named him Moses and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)
Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out”.

\[\text{Saul} \text{ was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULT)}\]

\[\text{It came about in Iconium that Paul and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)}\]

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

**Translation Strategies**

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

\[\text{You went over the Jordan}\]

and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

\[\text{You went over the Jordan River and came to the city of Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the tribe of the Amorites}\]

Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because Herod wants to kill you.” (Luke 13:31 ULT)

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

\[\text{She named him Moses}\]

and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)

\[\text{She named him Moses (which sounds like ‘drawn out’), and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”}\]

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

\[\text{...she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi}\]
…she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called Well of the Living One who sees me;

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

…a young man named Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

…a young man named Paul

The footnote would look like:

| [1] Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But Saul

, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

a young man named Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

The footnote would look like:

| [1] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But Saul

, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

It came about in Iconium that Paul

and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that Paul and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:
This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

(Go back to: Introduction to 1 John)
Hyperbole

Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

- It rains here every night.
  1. The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.
  2. The speaker means this as a generalization if he means that it rains here most nights.
  3. The speaker means this as a hyperbole if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

Hyperbole: This is a figure of speech that uses exaggeration. A speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

- They will not leave one stone upon another (Luke 19:44 ULT)
- This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.
- Moses was educated in all the learning of the Egyptians (Acts 7:22 ULT)
- This hyperbole means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught, and thus was as educated as any Egyptian.

Generalization: This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

- The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame, but honor will come to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)
- These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.
- And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7)
- This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” it does not necessarily mean exactly “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never.” It simply means “most,” “most of the time,” “hardly any,” or “rarely.”

Reason this is a translation issue

1. Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.
2. If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)
Examples from the Bible

Examples of Hyperbole

If your hand causes you to stumble, **cut it off**. It is better for you to enter into life maimed...
(Mark 9:43 ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should **do whatever extreme things** we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expression the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were **many, many** soldiers in the Philistine army.

But as his anointing teaches you about **all things** and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about **all things that we need to know**. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

They found him, and they said to him, "**Everyone** is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that **many people** were looking for him, or that all of Jesus’ closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

Examples of Generalization

**Can anything good come out of Nazareth?** (John 1:46 ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "**Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies.**" (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

**A lazy hand causes poverty, but the hand of the diligent makes him rich.** (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

Caution

Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

...they saw Jesus **walking on the sea** and coming near the boat... (John 6:19 ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

Do not assume that the word "all" is always a generalization that means “most.”
Yahweh is righteous in all his ways and gracious in all he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
3. For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
4. For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and a great number of troops.

(2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases”.

The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame... (Proverbs 13:18 ULT)

In general, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7)

“And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles generally do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.”

(3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

Almost all the country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”

or:

Many of the country of Judea and many of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”

(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5 ULT)
The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(Go back to: 1 John 2:27)
Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are telling me a lie.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

- he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided”.

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

- I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof. (Luke 7:6 ULT)

The phrase “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house”.

- Let these words go deeply into your ears. (Luke 9:44 ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say”.

Purpose: An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples from the Bible

- Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your flesh and bone.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

- the children of Israel went out with a high hand. (Exodus 14:8 ASV)
This means, “The Israelites went out defiantly.”

the one who *lifts up my head* (Psalm 3:3 ULT)

This means, “the one who helps me.”

**Translation Strategies**

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

   Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your flesh and bone.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

   ...Look, we all *belong to the same nation.*

   he resolutely set his face
to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

   He started to travel to Jerusalem, *determined to reach it.*

   **I am not worthy that you should enter** under my roof.

   . (Luke 7:6 ULT)

   I am not worthy that you should enter *my house.*

2. Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

   Let these words go deeply into your ears

   (Luke 9:44 ULT)

   *Be all ears* when I say these words to you.

   “My eyes grow dim

   from grief (Psalm 6:7 ULT)

   I am crying my *eyes out*

   (Go back to: 1 John 2:5; 3:16; 5:9)
Inclusive and Exclusive “We”

**Description**

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but not you.” The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.

**Reason this is a translation issue**

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we” will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

**Examples from the Bible**

**Inclusive**

...the shepherds said one to each other, “Let us now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to us.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us,” they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let us go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said “us,” he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

**Exclusive**

we have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to us (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

They said, “We have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish, unless we went and bought food for all this crowd of people.” (Luke 9:13 ULT)
In the first clause, the disciples are telling Jesus how much food they have among them, so this “we” could be the inclusive form or the exclusive form. In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food, so that “we” would be the exclusive form, since Jesus would not go to buy food.

(Go back to: 1 John 1:5; 2:1)
Metaphor

Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say:

- The girl I love is a red rose.

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer's task is to understand in what way they are alike.

The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about "the girl I love". This is the Topic. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and "a red rose." The red rose is the Image to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both beautiful. This is the Idea that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the Point of Comparison.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The Topic, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The Image, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The Idea, the abstract concept or quality that the physical Image brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the Image and the Topic are similar. Often, the Idea of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the Idea himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a metaphor is a figure of speech that uses a physical Image to apply an abstract Idea to the speaker's Topic.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a Topic, with at least one Point of Comparison (Idea) between the Topic and the Image. Often in metaphors, the Topic and the Image are explicitly stated, but the Idea is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the Topic and the Image and to figure out for themselves the Idea that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a "passive" metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being "active." Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these "dead metaphors." Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms “table leg”, “family tree”, “book leaf” (meaning a page in
a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

**Patterned Pairs of Concepts acting as Metaphors**

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction UP (the Image) often represents the concepts of MORE or BETTER (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going up,” “A highly intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The temperature is going down,” and “I am feeling very low.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world's languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat up.” MORE is spoken of as UP.
- “Let us go ahead with our debate.” DOING WHAT WAS PLANNED is spoken of as WALKING or ADVANCING.
- “You defend your theory well.” ARGUMENT is spoken of as WAR.
- “A flow of words” WORDS are spoken of as LIQUIDS.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

**Active Metaphors**

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. They make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

> For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.  
> (Malachi 4:2 ULT)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun's rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

> Jesus said, “Go and tell that fox...,” (Luke 13:32 ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors are the metaphors that need special care to translate correctly. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.
Jesus said to them, “I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty.” (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is “I” (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is “bread.” Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is “life.” In this case, Jesus stated the central **Idea** of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

**Purposes of Metaphor**

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

**Reasons this is a translation issue**

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

**Translation Principles**

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

**Examples from the Bible**

Listen to this word, *you cows of Bashan*, (Amos 4:1 ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria (“you”, the **Topic**) as if they were cows (the **Image**). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshipped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; *we are the clay. You are our potter*, and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The **Topic(s)** are “we” and “you,” and the **Image(s)** are “clay” and “potter.” The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The **Idea** being expressed by the comparison between the potter’s clay and “us” is that *neither the clay nor God’s people have a right to complain about what they are becoming.*
Jesus said to them, “Take heed and beware of the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we took no bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
3. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.” See Simile.
4. If the target audience would not know the Image, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.
5. If the target audience would not use that Image for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
6. If the target audience would not know what the Topic is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the Idea) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.
8. If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the Idea plainly without using a metaphor.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, fell at his feet. (Mark 5:22 ULT)

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

It was because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law, (Mark 10:5 ULT)

It was because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law,
We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”

- And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay.
- You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

(4) If the target audience would not know the Image, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.

- Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad.
- (Acts 26:14 ULT)

(5) If the target audience would not use that Image for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

- And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay.
- You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

(6) If the target audience would not know what the Topic is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

- Yahweh lives; may my rock be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

- Yahweh lives; may my rock be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.
I will make you become fishers of men.

(Mark 1:17 ULT)

I will make you become people who gather men. Now you gather fish. I will make you gather people.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns.
Metonymy

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A metonym is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

and the blood of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

• as a shorter way of referring to something
• to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not used to metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. “Throne” is a metonym for “kingly authority,” “kingship,” or “reign.” This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

Immediately his mouth was opened (Luke 1:64 ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

...who warned you to flee from the wrath that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

The word “wrath” or “anger” is a metonym for “punishment.” God was extremely angry with the people, and as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.
Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

“He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "The wine in this cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."

(2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

“The Lord God will give him the kingly authority of his father, David.”

or:

“The Lord God will make him king like his ancestor, King David.”

who warned you to flee from the wrath to come? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

“who warned you to flee from God's coming punishment?”

To learn about some common metonyms, see Biblical Imagery - Common Metonyms.

Parallelism

Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is also called synonymous parallelism.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles’ letters.

Synonymous parallelism (the kind in which the two phrases mean the same thing) in the poetry of the original languages has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and above the ordinary way of speaking.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it is confusing, rather than beautiful.

Note: We use the term “synonymous parallelism” for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term **Doublet** for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

Examples from the Bible

(1) **The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.**

| Your word is a lamp to my feet and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT) |

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God’s word teaches people how to live.

| You make him to rule over the works of your hands; you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT) |

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

(2) **The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.**

| The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere, keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULT) |

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

(3) **The second completes what is said in the first.**
I lift up my voice to Yahweh, and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULT)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

(4) The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous, but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULT)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath, but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULT)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

Until now you have deceived me and told me lies. (Judges 16:13, ULT) - Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

“Until now you have deceived me with your lies.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT) - The phrase “all the paths he takes” is a metaphor for “all he does.”

“Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.”

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2 ULT) - This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

“For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.”

(2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

“Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.”
Next we recommend you learn about:

**Personification**

(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

- **you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13 ULT)
  - “All you have done is lie to me.”

- **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)
  - “Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.”

(Go back to: 1 John 1:1; 1:9; 2:11)
Personification

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

- Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

Or sin:

- sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things, such as wealth, as if they were relationships between people.

- You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples from the Bible

- You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

- Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

1. Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
2. In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

...sin crouches
at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT) - God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

...sin is at your door, waiting to attack you

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

...sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT) - This can be translated with the word “as.”

...sin is crouching at the door, just as a wild animal does waiting to attack a person.

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

...even the winds and the sea obey him

(Matthew 8:27 ULT) - The men speak of the “wind and the sea” as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

He even controls the winds and the sea.

NOTE: We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.
Possession

Description

In common English, “possession” refers to having something, or to something that a person has. In English that grammatical relationship is shown by using the word “of”, by using an apostrophe and the letter s, or by using a possessive pronoun.

- the house of my grandfather
- my grandfather's house
- his house

Possession is used in Hebrew, Greek, and English for a variety of situations. Here are a few common situations that it is used for.

- Ownership - Someone owns something.
  - My clothes - The clothes that I own
- Social relationship - Someone has some kind of social relationship with another.
  - my mother - the woman who gave birth to me, or the woman who cared for me
  - my teacher - the person who teaches me
- Contents - Something has something in it.
  - a bag of clothes - a bag that has clothes in it, or a bag that is full of clothes
- Part and whole: One thing is part of another.
  - my head - the head that is part of my body
  - the roof of a house - the roof that is part of a house

Reasons this is a translation issue

- You (the translator) need to understand the relationship between two ideas represented by the two nouns when one possesses the other.
- Some languages do not use possession for all of the situations that your source text Bible might use it for.

Examples from the Bible

Ownership - In the example below, the son owned the money.

...the younger son...wasted his money with wildly extravagant living. (Luke 15:13)

Social Relationship - In the example below, the disciples were people who learned from John.

Then the disciples of John came to him... (Matthew 9:14 ULT)

Material - In the example below, the material used for making the crowns was gold.

On their heads were something like crowns of gold (Revelation 9:7)

Contents - In the example below, the cup has water in it.

Whoever gives you a cup of water to drink...will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)

Part of a whole - In the example below, the door was a part of the palace.

But Uriah slept at the door of the king's palace (2 Samuel 11:9 ULT)
**Part of a group** - In the example below, “us” refers to the whole group and “each one” refers to the individual members.

- To each one of us has been given a gift (Ephesians 4:7 ULT)

**Events and Possession**

Sometimes one or both of the nouns is an abstract noun that refers to an event or action. In the examples below, the abstract nouns are in **bold** print. These are just some of the relationships that are possible between two nouns when one of them refers to an event.

**Subject** - Sometimes the word after “of” tells who would do the action named by the first noun. In the example below, *John baptized people*.

- The baptism of John*, was it from heaven or from men? Answer me.” (Mark 11:30)

In the example below, *Christ loves us*.

- Who will separate us from the love of Christ*? (Romans 3:35)

**Object** - Sometimes the word after “of” tells who or what something would happen to. In the example below, *people love money*.

- For the love of money* is a root of all kinds of evil. (1 Timothy 6:10 ULT)

**Instrument** - Sometimes the word after “of” tells how something would happen. In the example below, God would punish people by sending enemies to attack them with swords.

- then be afraid of the sword, because wrath brings the punishment of the sword* (Job 19:29 ULT)

**Representation** - In the example below, John was baptizing people who were repenting of their sins. They were being baptized to show that they were repenting. Their baptism represented their repentance.

- As John came, he was baptizing in the wilderness and was preaching a baptism of repentance* for the forgiveness of sins. (Mark 1:4 ULT)

**Strategies for learning what the relationship is between the two nouns**

1. Read the surrounding verses to see if they help you to understand the relationship between the two nouns.
2. Read the verse in the UST. Sometimes it shows the relationship clearly.
3. See what the notes say about it.

**Translation Strategies**

If possession would be a natural way to show a particular relationship between two nouns, consider using it. If it would be strange or hard to understand, consider these.

1. Use an adjective to show that one describes the other.
2. Use a verb to show how the two are related.
3. If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(1) Use an adjective to show that one describes the other. The adjective below is in **bold** print.

- On their heads were something like crowns of gold
“On their heads were gold * crowns*”

(2) Use a verb to show how the two are related. In the example below, the added verb is in bold.

...Whoever gives you a cup of water to drink...will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)

...Whoever gives you a cup that *has* water in it* to drink...will not lose his reward.

**Wealth is worthless on the day of wrath**

(Proverbs 11:4 ULT)

Wealth is worthless on the day when God *shows* his wrath.* Wealth is worthless on the day when God punishes people because of his wrath**.

(3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb. In the example below, that verb is in bold.

Notice that I am not speaking to your children, who have not known or seen the punishment of Yahweh your God

, (Deuteronomy 11:2 ULT)

Notice that I am not speaking to your children who have not known or seen how Yahweh your God *punished* the people of Egypt.*

**You will only observe and see the punishment of the wicked**

, (Psalms 91:8 ULT)

You will only observe and see how Yahweh *punishes* the wicked*.

**...you will receive the gift of the Holy Spirit**

, (Acts 2:38 ULT)

...you will receive the Holy Spirit, whom God will *give* to you*.

(Go back to: 1 John 2:5)
Pronouns

Description

Pronouns are words that people might use to refer to someone or something instead of using a noun. Some examples are "I", "you", "he", "it", "this", "that", "himself", "someone", and others. Personal pronouns are the most common type of pronoun.

Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns refer to people or things and show if the speaker is referring to himself, the person he is speaking to, or someone or something else. The following are kinds of information that personal pronouns may give. Other types of pronouns may give some of this information, as well.

Person

- First Person - The speaker and possibly others (I, we)
  - Exclusive and Inclusive "We"
- Second Person - The person or people that the speaker is talking to and possibly others (you)
  - Forms of You
- Third Person - Someone or something other than the speaker and those he is talking to (he, she, it, they)

Number

- Singular - one (I, you, he, she, it)
- Plural - more than one (we, you, they)
  - Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups
- Dual - two (Some languages have pronouns for specifically two people or two things.)

Gender

- Masculine - he
- Feminine - she
- Neuter - it

Relationship to other words in the sentence

- Subject of the verb: I, you, he, she, it, we, they
- Object of the verb or preposition: me, you, him, her, it, us, them
- Possessor with a noun: my, your, his, her, its, our, their
- Possessor without a noun: mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs

Other Types of pronouns

Reflexive Pronouns refer to another noun or pronoun in the same sentence: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves.

- John saw himself

in the mirror. - The word "himself" refers to John.
Interrogative Pronouns are used to make a question that needs more than just a yes or no for an answer: who, whom, whose, what, where, when, why, how

- Who
  built the house?

Relative Pronouns mark a relative clause. They give more information about a noun in the main part of the sentence: that, which, who, whom, where, when

- I saw the house that
  John built. The clause “that John built” tells which house I saw.
- I saw the man who
  built the house. The clause “who built the house” tells which man I saw.

Demonstrative Pronouns are used to draw attention to someone or something and to show distance from the speaker or something else: this, these, that, those.

- Have you seen this
  here?
- Who is that
  over there?

Indefinite pronouns are used when no particular noun is being referred to: any, anyone, someone, anything, something, some. Sometimes a personal pronoun is used in a generic way to do this: you, they, he or it.

- He does not want to talk to anyone

- Someone
  fixed it, but I do not know who.
- They
  say that you should not wake a sleeping dog.

In the last example, “they” and “you” just refer to people in general.

(Go back to: 1 John 1:1)
Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

Those who stood by said, “Is this how you insult God's high priest?” (Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking about his way of insulting God's high priest. Rather they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purpose of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

Examples from the Bible

- Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)
  Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

  Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)
  God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

- Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULT)
  Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.
And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden... (Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, “Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?” If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the answer after the question.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?

Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Of course not! Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)
Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? *None of you would do that!*

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?

It is like a mustard seed... *(Luke 13:18-19 ULT)*

*This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed... “*

Is this how you insult God's high priest?

*(Acts 23:4 ULT)*

*You should not insult God’s high priest!*  

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?

*(Job 3:11 ULT)*

*I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!*  

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?

*(Luke 1:43 ULT)*

*How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!*  

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? *(1 Kings 21:7 ULT)*

*You still rule the kingdom of Israel, do you not?*

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the orignal speaker communicated in his.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? *(Matthew 7:9 ULT)*

If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, *would you give him a stone?*

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?

Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! *(Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)*

*What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils? Yet my poeple have forgotten me for days without number*

(Back up: 1 John 2:22; 3:12; 3:17; 5:5)
**Synecdoche**

**Description**

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

*My soul* exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULT)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said "my soul," which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

*the Pharisees* said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful...?” (Mark 2:24 ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

**Reasons this is a translation issue**

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

**Example from the Bible**

I looked on all the deeds that *my hands* had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

“*My hands*" is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

**Translation Strategies**

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

“*My soul* exalts the Lord.” (Luke 1:46 ULT)

“I exalt the Lord.”

...the Pharisees

said to him (Mark 2:24 ULT)

...*a representative of the Pharisees* said to him...

...I looked on all the deeds that *my hands*
had accomplished... (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished

(Go back to: 1 John 4:2)
This page answers the question: Why does the ULT have missing or added verses, and should I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-source-text]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts]]

Textual Variants

Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However, people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, or some mistook a word for another that looked like it. Occasionally they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident, or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles have some of these sentences that were added. In the ULT, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULT based the ULT on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULT may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULT translators have sometimes included information about some of the differences between them, either in the ULT footnotes in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULT and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULT. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

Examples from the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULT has a footnote about verse 11.

10 See that you do not despise any of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. 11 [1]

[1] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11. For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULT, but it is marked off with square brackets ([ ]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

53 [Then every man went to his own house.... 11 She said, “No one, Lord.” Jesus said, “Neither do I condemn you. Go your way; from now on sin no more.”] [2]

[2] The best earliest manuscripts do not have John 7:53-8:11

Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULT or another version that you have access to.

1. Translate the verses that the ULT does and include the footnote that the ULT provides.
2. Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULT, which has a footnote about verse 16.
14 He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. 15 There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him.” ¹⁶[¹]

¹¹ The best ancient copies omit v. 16. If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.

(1) Translate the verses that the ULT does and include the footnote that the ULT provides.

14 He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵ There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him.” ¹⁶[¹]

¹¹ The best ancient copies omit verse 16. If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.

(2) Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

14 He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵ There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him. ¹⁶ If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.” ¹¹

¹¹ Some ancient copies do not have verse 16.

(1) Translate the verses that the ULT does and include the footnote that the ULT provides.

14 He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵ There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him.” ¹⁶[¹]

¹¹ The best ancient copies omit verse 16. If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.

(2) Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

14 He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵ There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him. ¹⁶ If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.” ¹¹

¹¹ Some ancient copies do not have verse 16.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-chapverse]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-terms]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-original]]

(1) Go back to: Introduction to 1 John)
Translating Son and Father

Door43 supports Bible translations that represent these concepts when they refer to God.

Biblical Witness

"Father" and "Son" are names that God calls himself in the Bible.

The Bible shows that God called Jesus his Son:

After he was baptized, Jesus came up immediately from the water, and...a voice came out of the heavens saying, “This is my beloved Son. I am very pleased with him.” (Matthew 3:16-17 ULT)

The Bible shows that Jesus called God his Father:

Jesus said, “I praise you Father, Lord of heaven and earth,...no one knows the Son except the Father, and no one knows the Father except the Son” (Matthew 11:25-27 ULT) (See also: John 6:26-57)

Christians have found that “Father” and “Son” are the ideas that most essentially describe the eternal relationship of the First and Second Persons of the Trinity to each other. The Bible indeed refers to them in various ways, but no other terms reflect the eternal love and intimacy between these Persons, nor the interdependent eternal relationship between them.

Jesus referred to God in the following terms:

Baptize them into the name of the Father, of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 28:19 ULT)

The intimate, loving relationship between the Father and the Son is eternal, just as they are eternal.

The Father loves the Son. (John 3:35-36; 5:19-20 ULT)

I love the Father, I do what the Father commands me, just as he gave me the commandment. (John 14:31 ULT)

...no one knows who the Son is except the Father, and no one knows who the Father is except the Son. (Luke 10:22 ULT)

The terms “Father” and “Son” also communicate that the Father and the Son are of the same essence; they are both eternal God.

Jesus said, “Father, glorify your Son so that the Son may glorify you...I glorified you on the earth,...Now Father, glorify me...with the glory that I had with you before the world was created.” (John 17:1-5 ULT)

But in these last days, he [God the Father] has spoken to us through a Son, whom he appointed to be the heir of all things. It is through him that God also made the universe. He is the brightness of God's glory, the very character of his essence. He even holds everything together by the word of his power. (Hebrews 1:2-3 ULT)

Jesus said to him, “I have been with you for so long and you still do not know me, Philip? Whoever has seen me has seen the Father. How can you say, ‘Show us the Father’? (John 14:9 ULT)
Human Relationships

Human fathers and sons are not perfect, but the Bible still uses those terms for the Father and Son, who are perfect.

Just as today, human father-son relationships during Bible times were never as loving or perfect as the relationship between Jesus and his Father. But this does not mean that the translator should avoid the concepts of father and son. The Scriptures use these terms to refer to God, the perfect Father and Son, as well as to sinful human fathers and sons. In referring to God as Father and Son, choose words in your language that are widely used to refer to a human “father” and “son.” In this way you will communicate that God the Father and God the Son are of the same divine essence (they are both God), just as a human father and son are of the same human essence (they are both human and share the same human characteristics).

Translation Strategies

1. Think through all the possibilities within your language to translate the words “son” and “father.” Determine which words in your language best represent the divine “Son” and “Father.”
2. If your language has more than one word for “son,” use the word that has the closest meaning to “only son” (or “first son” if necessary).
3. If your language has more than one word for “father,” use the word that has the closest meaning to “birth father,” rather than “adoptive father.”

(See God the Father and Son of God pages in unfoldingWord® Translation Words for help translating “Father” and “Son.”)

(Go back to: 1 John 1:3; 1:7; 2:22; 3:8; 3:23; 4:14; 4:15; 5:5; 5:9; 5:11; 5:13; 5:20)
**age, aged**

**Definition:**

The term “age” refers to the number of years a person has lived. It also used to refer generally to a time period.

- Other words used to express an extended period of time include “era” and “season.”
- Jesus refers to “this age” as the present time when evil, sin, and disobedience fill the earth.
- There will be a future age when righteousness will reign over a new heaven and a new earth.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term “age” could also be translated as “era” or “number of years old” or “time period” or “time.”
- The phrase “at a very old age” could be translated as “at many years old” or “when he was very old” or “when he had lived a very long time.”
- The phrase “this present evil age” means “during this time right now when people are very evil.”

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 29:28
- 1 Corinthians 02:07
- Hebrews 06:05
- Job 05:26

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: G165, G1074

*(Go back to: 1 John 2:17)*
amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded

Definition:

All these terms refer to being very surprised because of something extraordinary that happened.

- Some of these words are translations of Greek expressions that mean “struck with amazement” or “standing outside of (oneself).” These expressions show how very surprised or shocked the person was feeling. Other languages might also have ways to express this.
- Usually the event that caused the wonder and amazement was a miracle, something only God could do.
- The meaning of these terms can also include feelings of confusion because what happened was totally unexpected.
- Other ways to translate these words could be “extremely surprised” or “very shocked.”
- Related words include “marvelous” (amazing, wonderful), “amazement,” and “astonishment.”
- In general, these terms are positive and express that the people were happy about what had happened.

(See also: miracle, sign)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:9-11
- Acts 09:20-22
- Galatians 01:06
- Mark 02:10-12
- Matthew 07:28
- Matthew 15:29-31
- Matthew 19:25

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 John 3:13)
ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Definition:

The term “father” refers to a person’s male parent.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to a male ancestor(s) of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: God the Father, son, Son of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:02
- Acts 07:32
- Acts 07:45
- Acts 22:03
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 07:4-6
- John 04:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 03:07
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 01:07
- Matthew 03:09
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 04:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1, H2, H25, H369, H539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G540, G1080, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

(See back to: 1 John 2:13)
anoint, anointed, anointing

Definition:

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. In biblical times, there were several reasons for anointing someone with oil.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.
- In biblical times, a woman might anoint herself with perfume to make herself more sexually attractive.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour oil on” or “put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on.”
- To “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil.” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated.”
- In some contexts the term “anoint” could be translated as “appoint.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: Christ, consecrate, high priest, King of the Jews, priest, prophet)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:20
- 1 John 02:27
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- Acts 04:27-28
- Amos 06:5-6
- Exodus 29:5-7
- James 05:13-15

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 John 2:20; 2:27)
antichrist

Definition:
The term “antichrist” refers to a person or teaching that is against Jesus Christ and his work. There are many antichrists in the world.

- The apostle John wrote that a person is the antichrist if he deceives people by saying that Jesus is not the Messiah or if he denies that Jesus is both God and human.
- The Bible also teaches that there is a general spirit of antichrist in the world which opposes Jesus’ work.
- The New Testament book of Revelation explains that there will be a man called “the antichrist” who will be revealed in the end times. This man will attempt to destroy God's people, but he will be defeated by Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:
- Other ways to translate this term could include a word or phrase that means “Christ-opposer” or “enemy of Christ” or “person who is against Christ.”
- The phrase “spirit of the antichrist” could also be translated as “spirit that is against Christ” or “(someone) teaching lies about Christ” or “attitude of believing lies about Christ” or “spirit that teaches lies about Christ.”
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Christ, reveal, tribulation)

Bible References:
- 1 John 02:18
- 1 John 04:03
- 2 John 01:07

Word Data:
- Strong’s: G500

(Go back to: 1 John 2 General Notes; 2:18; 2:22; Notes; 4:3)
astray, go astray, went astray, lead astray, stray

Definition:

The terms “stray” and “go astray” mean to disobey God’s will. People who are “led astray” have allowed other people or circumstances to influence them to disobey God.

- The word “astray” gives a picture of leaving a clear path or a place of safety to go down a wrong and dangerous path.
- Sheep who leave the pasture of their shepherd have “strayed.” God compares sinful people to sheep who have left him and “gone astray.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “go astray” could be translated as “go away from God” or “take a wrong path away from God’s will” or “stop obeying God” or “live in a way that goes away from God.”
- To “lead someone astray” could be translated as “cause someone to disobey God” or “influence someone to stop obeying God” or “cause someone to follow you down a wrong path.”

(See also: disobey, shepherd)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:07
- 2 Timothy 03:13
- Exodus 23:4-5
- Ezekiel 48:10-12
- Matthew 18:13
- Matthew 24:05
- Psalms 058:03
- Psalms 119:110

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5080, H7683, H7686, H8582, G4105, G5351

(Go back to: 1 John 2:26)
believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief

Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

1. believe
   • To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
   • To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

2. believe in
   • To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
   • When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
   • The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
   • To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

3. believer

In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.
   • The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
   • The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

4. unbelief

The term “unbelief” refers to not believing something or someone.
   • In the Bible, “unbelief” refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one's Savior.
   • A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an “unbeliever.”

Translation Suggestions:

• To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
• To “believe in” could be translated as “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”
• Some translations may prefer to say “believer in Jesus” or “believer in Christ.”
• This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means “person who trusts in Jesus” or “someone who knows Jesus and lives for him.”
• Other ways to translate “believer” could be “follower of Jesus” or “person who knows and obeys Jesus.”
• The term “believer” is a general term for any believer in Christ, while “disciple” and “apostle” were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.
• Other ways to translate “unbelief” could include “lack of faith” or “not believing.”
• The term “unbeliever” could be translated as “person who does not believe in Jesus” or “someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior.”

(See also: believe, apostle, Christian, disciple, faith, trust)
Bible References:

- Genesis 15:06
- Genesis 45:26
- Job 09:16-18
- Habakkuk 01:5-7
- Mark 06:4-6
- Mark 01:14-15
- Luke 09:41
- John 01:12
- Acts 06:05
- Acts 09:42
- Romans 03:03
- 1 Corinthians 06:01
- 1 Corinthians 09:05
- 2 Corinthians 06:15
- Hebrews 03:12
- 1 John 03:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 03:04 Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not believe him.
- 04:08 Abram believed God's promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he believed God's promise.
- 11:02 God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who believed in him.
- 11:06 But the Egyptians did not believe God or obey his commands.
- 37:05 Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who believes in me will never die. Do you believe this?”
- 43:01 After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The believers there constantly gathered together to pray.
- 43:03 While the believers were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the believers.
- 43:13 Every day, more people became believers.
- 46:06 That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the believers fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- 46:01 Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the believers.
- 46:09 Some believers who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus! It was at Antioch that believers in Jesus were first called “Christians.”
- 47:14 They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the believers in the churches.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H540, G543, G544, G569, G570, G571, G3982, G4100, G4102, G4103, G4135

(Go back to: 1 John 3 General Notes; 3:23; 4:1; 4:16; Notes; 5:1; 5:5; 5:10; 5:13)
beloved

Definition:
The term “beloved” is an expression of affection that describes someone who is loved and dear to someone else.

- The term “beloved” literally means “loved (one)” or “(who is) loved.”
- God refers to Jesus as his “beloved Son.”
- In their letters to Christian churches, the apostles frequently address their fellow believers as “beloved.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “loved” or “loved one” or “well-loved,” or “very dear.”
- In the context of talking about a close friend, this could be translated as “my dear friend” or “my close friend.” In English it is natural to say “my dear friend, Paul” or “Paul, who is my dear friend.” Other languages may find it more natural to order this in a different way.
- Note that the word “beloved” comes from the word for God’s love, which is unconditional, unselfish, and sacrificial.

(See also: love)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:14
- 1 John 03:02
- 1 John 04:07
- Mark 01:11
- Mark 12:06
- Revelation 20:09
- Romans 16:08
- Song of Solomon 01:14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H157, H1730, H2532, H3033, H3039, H4261, G25, G27, G5207

(Go back to: 1 John 2:7; 3:2; 3:21; 4:1; 4:7; 4:11)
**blood**

**Definition:**

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person's skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person's entire body.

- Blood is a metaphor for life, and when it is shed or poured out, it is a metaphor for the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal's life to pay for people's sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: flesh)

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 14:32
- Acts 02:20
- Acts 05:28
- Colossians 01:20
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 04:11
- Psalms 016:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **08:03** Before Joseph's brothers returned home, they tore Joseph's robe and dipped it in goat's blood.
- **10:03** God turned the Nile River into blood, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **11:05** All the houses of the Israelites had blood around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb's blood.
- **13:09** The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person's sin, and God's punishment passes over him.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1818, H5332, G129, G130, G131

(Go back to: 1 John 1:7; 5:6; 5:8)
**bold, boldness, emboldened**

**Definition:**

These terms all refer to having courage and confidence to speak the truth and do the right thing even when it is difficult or dangerous.

- A “bold” person is not afraid to say and do what is good and right, including defending people who are being mistreated. This could be translated as “courageous” or “fearless.”
- In the New Testament, the disciples continued to “boldly” preach about Christ in public places, in spite of the danger of being put in jail or killed. This could be translated as “confidently” or “with strong courage” or “courageously.”
- The “boldness” of these early disciples in speaking the good news of Christ's redeeming death on the cross resulted in the gospel being spread throughout Israel and nearby countries and finally, to the rest of the world. “Boldness” could also be translated as “confident courage.”

(See also: confidence, good news, redeem)

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 02:28
- 1 Thessalonians 02:1-2
- 2 Corinthians 03:12-13
- Acts 04:13

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H982, H5797, G662, G2292, G3618, G3954, G3955, G5111, G5112

(See also: confidence, good news, redeem)
born again, born of God, new birth

Definition:

The term “born again” was first used by Jesus to describe what it means for God to change a person from being dead spiritually to being alive spiritually. The terms “born of God” and “born of the Spirit” also refer to a person being given new spiritual life.

- All humans are born spiritually dead and are given a “new birth” when they accept Jesus Christ as their Savior.
- At the moment of the spiritual new birth, God's Holy Spirit begins to live in the new believer and empowers him to produce good spiritual fruit in his life.
- It is God's work to cause a person to be born again and become his child.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “born again” could include “born anew” or “born spiritually.”
- It is best to translate this term literally and use the normal word in the language that would be used for being born.
- The term “new birth” might be translated as “spiritual birth.”
- The phrase “born of God” could be translated as “caused by God to have new life like a newborn baby” or “given new life by God.”
- In the same way, “born of the Spirit” could be translated as “given new life by the Holy Spirit” or “empowered by the Holy Spirit to become God's child” or “caused by the Spirit to have new life like a newborn baby.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, save)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:09
- 1 Peter 01:03
- 1 Peter 01:23
- John 03:04
- John 03:07
- Titus 03:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: G313, G509, G1080, G3824

(Go back to: 1 John 2:29; 3:9; 4:7; 5:1; 5:4; 5:18)
brother

Definition:

The term “brother” refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

• In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
• In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
• A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

Translation Suggestions:

• It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
• In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
• In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
• If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
• Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
• Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: apostle, God the Father, sister, spirit)

Bible References:

• Acts 07:26
• Genesis 29:10
• Leviticus 19:17
• Nehemiah 03:01
• Philippians 04:21
• Revelation 01:09

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2455, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances

Definition:

A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term “burden” also has several figurative meanings:

- A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be “bearing” or “carrying” a “heavy burden.”
- A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
- A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
- The guilt of a person's sin is a burden to him.
- The “burden of the Lord” is a figurative way of referring to a “message from God” that a prophet must deliver to God's people.
- The term “burden” can be translated by “responsibility” or “duty” or “heavy load” or “message,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 03:6-9
- Galatians 06:1-2
- Galatians 06:03
- Genesis 49:15
- Matthew 11:30
- Matthew 23:04

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2960, H3053, H4614, H4853, H4864, H5445, H5447, H5448, H5449, H6006, G4, G916, G922, G2347, G2599, G2655, GS413

(Go back to: 1 John 5:3)
Cain

Facts:

Cain and his younger brother Abel were the first sons of Adam and Eve mentioned in the Bible.

- Cain was a farmer who produced food crops while Abel was a sheep herder.
- Cain killed his brother Abel in a fit of jealousy because God had accepted Abel's sacrifice but had not accepted Cain's sacrifice.
- As punishment, God sent him away from Eden and told him that the land would no longer yield crops for him.
- God put a mark on Cain's forehead as a sign that God would protect him from being killed by other people as he wandered.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Adam, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:12
- Genesis 04:02
- Genesis 04:09
- Genesis 04:15
- Hebrews 11:4
- Jude 01:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7014, G2535

(Go back to: 1 John 3:12)
call, call out

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” usually mean to speak loudly, but the term “call” can also mean to name or summon a person. There are also some other meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- When God “calls” people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, “His name is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God has specifically chosen that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know you and have chosen you.”

(See also: pray, cry)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 01:09
- Ephesians 04:01
- Galatians 01:15
- Matthew 02:15
- Philippians 03:14
Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 John 3:1)
**children, child, offspring**

**Definition:**

The term “child” (plural “children”) refers to the offspring of a man and woman. The term is often used more generally to refer to anyone who is young in age and is not yet a fully grown adult. The term “offspring” is a general reference to the biological descendants of people or animals.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called “children.”
- Often the term “children” is used to refer to a person's descendants.
- Often in the Bible, “offspring” has the same meaning as “children” or “descendants.”
- The term “seed” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to offspring.
- The phrase “children of” can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
  - children of the light
  - children of obedience
  - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to the Church. For example, sometimes the New Testament refers to people who believe in Jesus as “children of God.”

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “children” could be translated as “descendants” when it is referring to a person's great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, “children of” could be translated as, “people who have the characteristics of” or “people who behave like.”
- If possible, the phrase, “children of God” should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, “people who belong to God” or “God's spiritual children.”
- When Jesus calls his disciples “children,” this could also be translated as, “dear friends” or “my beloved disciples.”
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as “children,” this could also be translated as “dear fellow believers.”
- The phrase, “children of the promise” could be translated as, “people who have received what God promised them.”

(See also: descendant, seed, promise, son, spirit, believe, beloved)

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 02:28
- 3 John 01:04
- Galatians 04:19
- Genesis 45:11
- Joshua 08:34-35
- Nehemiah 05:05
- Acts 17:29
- Exodus 13:11-13
- Genesis 24:07
- Isaiah 41:8-9
- Job 05:25
- Luke 03:7
- Matthew 12:34
Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 John 2:1; 2:12; 2:14; 2:18; 2:28; 3:1; 3:2; 3:7; 3:10; 3:18; 4:4; 5:2; 5:21)
**Christ, Messiah**

**Facts:**

The terms “Messiah” and “Christ” mean “Anointed One” and refer to Jesus, God’s Son.

- Both “Messiah” and “Christ” are used in the New Testament to refer to God's Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning “anointed (one)” is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word “Christ” is often used as a title, as in “the Christ” and “Christ Jesus.”
- “Christ” also came to be used as part of his name, as in “Jesus Christ.”

**Translation Suggestions:**

- This term could be translated using its meaning, “the Anointed One” or “God's Anointed Savior.”
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like “Christ” or “Messiah.” (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, “Christ, the Anointed One.”
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of “Messiah” and “Christ” work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Son of God, David, Jesus, anoint)

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 05:1-3
- Acts 02:35
- Acts 05:40-42
- John 01:40-42
- John 03:27-28
- John 04:25
- Luke 02:10-12
- Matthew 01:16

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- 17:07 The Messiah was God's Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- 17:08 As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the Messiah came, almost 1,000 years.
- 21:01 From the very beginning, God planned to send the Messiah.
- 21:04 God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David's own descendants.
- 21:05 The Messiah would start the New Covenant.
- 21:06 God's prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.
- 21:09 The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- 43:07 “But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
• **43:09** “But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and Messiah!”
• **43:11** Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins.”
• **46:06** Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the Messiah.

**Word Data:**

• Strong's: H4899, G3323, G5547

*(Go back to: 1 John 1:3; 2:1; 2:22; 3:23; 4:2; 5:1; 5:6; 5:20)*
clean, wash

Definition:

The term “clean” generally refers either to removing dirt or stains from something or to not having any dirt or stain in the first place. The term “wash” refers specifically to the action of removing dirt or stains from something.

- “Cleanse” is the process of making something “clean.” It could also be translated as “wash” or “purify.”
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term “clean” means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared “clean” again.
- Sometimes “clean” is used figuratively to refer to moral purity, meaning to be “clean” from sin.

In the Bible, the term “unclean” is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be “unclean” until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something “unclean,” they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God’s commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God’s service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an “unclean spirit” refers to an evil spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for “clean” or “pure” (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, “ritually clean” or “acceptable to God.”
- “Cleanse” could be translated by “wash” or “purify.”
- Make sure that the words used for “clean” and “cleanse” can also be understood in a figurative sense.
- The term “unclean” could also be translated as “not clean” or “unfit in God’s eyes” or “physically unclean” or “defiled.”
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, “unclean” could be translated as “evil” or “defiled.”
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: defile, demon, holy, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Genesis 07:02
- Genesis 07:08
- Deuteronomy 12:15
- Psalms 051:07
- Proverbs 20:30
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Matthew 23:27
- Luke 05:13
- Acts 08:07
- Acts 10:27-29

207 / 317
• Colossians 03:05
• 1 Thessalonians 04:07
• James 04:08

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 John 1:7; 1:9)
command, commandment

Definition:

The term “command” means to order someone to do something. The term “commandment” refers to the thing that a person is commanded to do.

- The term “commandment” sometimes refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See decree, statute, law, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Luke 01:06
- Matthew 01:24
- Matthew 22:38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 01:17-19
- Romans 07:7-8

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 John 2:3; 2:4; 2:7; 2:8; 3:22; 3:23; 3:24; 4:21; 5:2; 5:3)
condemn, condemned, condemnation

Definition:

The terms “condemn” and “condemnation” refer to judging someone for doing something wrong.

- Often the word “condemn” includes punishing that person for what they did wrong.
- Sometimes “condemn” means to falsely accuse someone or to judge someone harshly.
- The term “condemnation” refers to the act of condemning or accusing someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “harshly judge” or “criticize falsely.”
- The phrase “condemn him” could be translated as, “judge that he is guilty” or “state that he must be punished for his sin.”
- The term “condemnation” could be translated as, “harsh judging” or “declaring to be guilty” or “punishment of guilt.”

(See also: judge, punish)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:20
- Job 09:29
- John 05:24
- Luke 06:37
- Matthew 12:07
- Proverbs 17:15-16
- Psalms 034:22
- Romans 05:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6064, H7034, H7561, H8199, G176, G843, G2607, G2613, G2631, G2632, G2633, G2917, G2919, G2920, G5272, G6048

(Go back to: 1 John 3:20; 3:21)
confess, confession

Definition:

To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A “confession” is a statement or admission that something is true.

- The term “confess” can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
- The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
- James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
- Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confess” could include, “admit” or “testify” or “declare” or “acknowledge” or “affirm.”
- Different ways to translate “confession” could be, “declaration” or “testimony” or “statement about what we believe” or “admitting sin.”

(See also: faith, testimony)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:8-10
- 2 John 01:7-8
- James 05:16
- Leviticus 05:5-6
- Matthew 03:4-6
- Nehemiah 01:6-7
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Psalms 038:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3034, H8426, G1843, G3670, G3671

(Go back to: 1 John 1:9; 2:23; 4:2; 4:3; 4:15)
confidence, confident

Definition:

The term “confidence” refers to being sure that something is true or certain to happen.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” often means to wait expectantly for something that is sure to happen. The ULT often translates this as “confidence” or “confidence for the future” or “future confidence” especially when it means to be assured of receiving what God has promised to believers in Jesus.
- Often the term “confidence” refers especially to the certainty that believers in Jesus have that they will someday be with God forever in heaven.
- The phrase, “have confidence in God” means to fully expect to receive and experience what God has promised.
- Being “confident” means believing in God’s promises and acting with the assurance that God will do what he has said. This term can also have the meaning of acting boldly and courageously.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “confident” could be translated as “assured” or “very sure.”
- The phrase “be confident” could also be translated as “trust completely” or “be completely sure about” or “know for certain.”
- The term “confidently” could also be translated as “boldly” or “with certainty.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confidence” could include, “complete assurance” or “sure expectation” or “certainty.”

(See also: believe, believe, bold, faithful, hope, trust)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H982, H983, H986, H3689, H3690, H4009, G2292, G3954, G3982, G4006, G5287

(Go back to: 1 John 3:19; 3:21; 4:17; 5:14)
darkness

Definition:
The term “darkness” literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, “darkness” means “impurity” or “evil” or “spiritual blindness.”
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression “dominion of darkness” refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term “darkness” can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: Metaphor)
- People who do not know God are said to be “living in darkness,” which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as “outer darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, “darkness of night” (as opposed to “light of day”) or “not seeing anything, like at night” or “evil, like a dark place”.

(See also: corrupt, dominion, kingdom, light, redeem, righteous)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:06
- 1 John 02:08
- 1 Thessalonians 05:05
- 2 Samuel 22:12
- Colossians 01:13
- Isaiah 05:30
- Jeremiah 13:16
- Joshua 24:7
- Matthew 08:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H652, H653, H2816, H2821, H2822, H2825, H3990, H3991, H4285, H5890, H6205, G2217, G4652, G4653, G4655, G4656

(Go back to: 1 John 1:5; 1:6; 2:8; 2:9; 2:11)
day

Definition:

The term “day” literally refers to a period of time lasting 24 hours beginning at sundown. It is also used figuratively.

- For the Israelites and the Jews, a day began at sunset of one day and ended at sunset of the next day.
- Sometimes the term “day” is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the “day of Yahweh” or “last days.”
- Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate “day” nonfiguratively.
- Other translations of “day” could include, “time” or “season” or “occasion” or “event,” depending on the context.

(See also: judgment day, last day)

Bible References:

- Acts 20:06
- Daniel 10:04
- Ezra 06:15
- Ezra 06:19
- Matthew 09:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H3118, H6242, G2250

(Go back to: 1 John 4:17)
deceive, deceit, deceiver, deceitful, deception, illusions

Definition:
The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true. The act of deceiving someone is called “deceit” or “deception.”

- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated as “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: true)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:08
- 1 Timothy 02:14
- 2 Thessalonians 02:3-4
- Genesis 03:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:64
- Micah 06:11

Word Data:


(Original text continues)
declare, proclaim, announce

Definition:
The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. Other terms with similar meaning include “proclaim,” “proclamation,” “announce,” and “announcement.”

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

Translation Suggestions:
- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase “this is Yahweh's declaration” could be translated as “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: preach, decree)

Bible References:
- 1 Chronicles 16:24
- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- Amos 02:16
- Ezekiel 05:11-12
- Matthew 07:21-23

Word Data:

(Go back to: 1 John 1:2; 1:3; 1:5)
die, dead, deadly, death,

Definition:

The term “death” refers to being physically dead instead of alive.

1. Physical death

- To “die” means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- The expression “put to death” refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Eternal death

- Eternal death is the separation of a person from God.
- This is the kind of death that happened to Adam when he sinned and disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- This same kind of death happens to every person, because we sin. But God gives us eternal life when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, to “die” may be expressed as to “not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to “pass away” in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, eternal life and eternal death are often compared to physical life and physical death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and eternal death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say “eternal death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: nominal adjective)
- The expression “put to death” could also be translated as “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: believe, faith, life)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:21
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Acts 10:42
- Acts 14:19
- Colossians 02:15
- Colossians 02:20
- Genesis 02:15-17
- Genesis 34:27
- Matthew 16:28
- Romans 05:10
- Romans 05:12
- Romans 06:10
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **02:11** “Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt.”
- **07:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:05** “Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**.”
- **40:08** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:07** “Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead.”
- **48:02** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 John 3:14; Notes; 5:16; 5:17)
**Definition:**

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.

The term “forever” refers to never-ending time.

- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like. It emphasizes that something will always happen or exist. It refers to time that never ends.
- God said that David's throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David's descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- “Forever” could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David's throne lasting forever could be translated as “David's descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: David, reign, life)

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 17:08
- Genesis 48:04
- Exodus 15:17
- 2 Samuel 03:28-30
- 1 Kings 02:32-33
- Job 04:20-21
- Psalms 021:04
- Isaiah 09:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Daniel 07:18
- Luke 18:18
- Acts 13:46
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal life?”
- **28:01** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good Teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey God’s laws.”
- **28:10** Jesus answered, “Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name’s sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive eternal life.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G126, G165, G166, G1336

(Go back to: 1 John 1:2; 2:25; Notes; 3:15; 5:11; 5:13; 5:20)
evil, wicked, unpleasant

Definition:
In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

• While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
• The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
• The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:
• Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
• Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
• Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, sin, good, righteous, demon)

Bible References:
• 1 Samuel 24:11
• 1 Timothy 06:10
• 3 John 01:10
• Genesis 02:17
• Genesis 06:5-6
• Job 01:01
• Job 08:20
• Judges 09:57
• Luke 06:22-23
• Matthew 07:11-12
• Proverbs 03:07
• Psalms 022:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:
• 02:04 “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and evil like he does.”
• 03:01 After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very wicked and violent.
• 03:02 But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among wicked people.
• 04:02 God saw that if they all kept working together to do evil, they could do many more sinful things.
• 08:12 “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for good!”
• 14:02 They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many evil things.
• 17:01 But then he (Saul) became a wicked man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
• 18:11 In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were evil.
• 29:08 The king was so angry that he threw the wicked servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
• 45:02 They said, “We heard him (Stephen) speak evil things about Moses and God!”
• 50:17 He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.
Word Data:


(Go back to: Introduction to 1 John; 1 John 2 General Notes; 3:12)
faith

Definition:
In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

• To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
• To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God's teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
• True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
• Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression “the truths of the faith.”
• In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:
• In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
• For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: abstractnouns)
• The expression “keep the faith” could be translated by “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
• The sentence “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
• The expression “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: believe, faithful)

Bible References:
• 2 Timothy 04:07
• Acts 06:7
• Galatians 02:20-21
• James 02:20

Examples from the Bible stories:
• 05:06 When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham's faith by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
• 31:07 Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, “You man of little faith, why did you doubt?”
• 32:16 Jesus said to her, “Your faith has healed you. Go in peace.”
• 38:09 Then Jesus said to Peter, “Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your faith will not fail.

Word Data:
• Strong's: H529, H530, G1680, G3640, G4102, G6066

(Go back to: 1 John 1 General Notes; 5:4)
faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy

Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

The term “unfaithful” describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is “unfaithfulness.”

- The people of Israel were called “unfaithful” when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
- In marriage, someone who commits adultery is “unfaithful” to his or her spouse.
- God used the term “unfaithfulness” to describe Israel’s disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”
- Depending on the context, “unfaithful” could be translated as “not faithful” or “unbelieving” or “not obedient” or “not loyal.”
- The phrase “the unfaithful” could be translated as “people who are not faithful (to God)” or “unfaithful people” or “those who disobey God” or “people who rebel against God.”
- The term “unfaithfulness” could be translated as “disobedience” or “disloyalty” or “not believing or obeying.”
- In some languages, the term “unfaithful” is related to the word for “unbelief.”

(See also: adultery, believe, disobey, faith, believe)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:07
- Joshua 02:14
- Judges 02:16-17
- 1 Samuel 02:9
- Psalm 012:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 01:26
- Jeremiah 09:7-9
- Hosea 05:07
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 01:07
- 1 Thessalonians 05:24
- 3 John 01:05
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:09** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon's death.
- **35:12** "The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!"
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:04** If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H529, H530, H539, H540, H571, H898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G569, G571, G4103

(Go back to: 1 John 1:9)
false prophet

Definition:

A false prophet is a person who wrongly claims that his message comes from God.

- The prophecies of false prophets are not usually fulfilled. That is, they do not come true.
- False prophets teach messages that partially or totally contradict what the Bible says.
- This term could also be translated as “person who falsely claims to be God’s spokesman” or “someone who falsely claims to speak God’s words.”
- The New Testament teaches that in the end times there will be many false prophets who will try to deceive people into thinking that they come from God.

(See also: fulfill, prophet, true)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:1-3
- 2 Peter 02:01
- Acts 13:6-8
- Luke 06:26
- Matthew 07:16
- Matthew 24:23-25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G5578

(Go back to: 1 John 4:1)
fear, afraid, dread

Definition:
The terms “fear” refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term “fear” can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king. The term “dread” refers to extreme or intense fear.

Translation Suggestions:
• Depending on the context, the term “fear” can be translated in various ways, depending on the context. Some possibilities include: “be afraid;” “deeply respect;” or “deep respect;” “revere,” or “reverence;” or perhaps “be in awe of.”
• The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
• The sentence “The fear of God fell on all of them” might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;” or, “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;” or, “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”

(See also: marvel, awe, Lord, power, Yahweh)

Bible References:
• 1 John 04:18
• Acts 02:43
• Acts 19:15-17
• Genesis 50:21
• Isaiah 11:3-5
• Job 06:14
• Jonah 01:09
• Luke 12:05
• Matthew 10:28
• Proverbs 10:24-25

Word Data:

(Go back to: 1 John 4:18)
fellowship

Definition:
In general, the term “fellowship” refers to friendly interactions between members of a group of people who share similar interests and experiences.

- In the Bible, the term “fellowship” usually refers to the unity of believers in Christ.
- Christian fellowship is a shared relationship that believers have with one another through their relationship with Christ and the Holy Spirit.
- The early Christians expressed their fellowship through listening to the teaching of God’s Word and praying together, through the sharing of their belongings, and through eating meals together.
- Christians also have fellowship with God through their faith in Jesus and his sacrificial death on the cross which removed the barrier between God and people.

Translation Suggestions:
- Ways to translate “fellowship” could include “a sharing together” or “relationship” or “companionship” or “Christian community.”

Bible References:
- 1 John 01:03
- Acts 02:40-42
- Philippians 01:3-6
- Philippians 02:01
- Philippians 03:10
- Psalms 055:12-14

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H2266, H8667, G2842, G2844, G3352, G4790
flesh

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kinfolk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression “become one flesh” could be translated as “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: euphemism). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who “become one flesh” literally become one person.

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:16
- 2 John 01:07
- Ephesians 06:12
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 02:24
- John 01:14
- Matthew 16:17
- Romans 08:08

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G2907, G4559, G4560, G4561

(Go back to: 1 John 2:16; 4:2)
forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned

Definition:

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. “Forgiveness” is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean “cancel,” as in the expression “forgive a debt.”
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus’ sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

The term “pardon” means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

- This word has the same meaning as “forgive” but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
- In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
- Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “forgive” could be translated as “pardon” or “cancel” or “release” or “not hold against” (someone).
- The term “forgiveness” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “practice of not resenting” or “declaring (someone) as not guilty” or “the act of pardoning.”
- If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate “pardon.”

(See also: guilt)

Bible References:

- Genesis 50:17
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Joshua 24:19-20
- 2 Kings 05:17-19
- Psalms 025:11
- Psalms 025:17-19
- Isaiah 55:6-7
- Isaiah 40:02
- Luke 05:21
- Acts 08:22
- Ephesians 04:31-32
- Colossians 03:12-14
- 1 John 02:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 07:10 But Esau had already forgiven Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- 13:15 Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would forgive the people. God listened to Moses and forgave them.
- 17:13 David repented of his sin and God forgave him.
- 21:05 In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people’s hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
• 29:01 One day Peter asked Jesus, “Master, how many times should I forgive my brother when he sins against me?”
• 29:08 I forgave your debt because you begged me.
• 38:05 Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.

Word Data:

• H5546, H5547, H3722, H5375, H5545, H5547, H7521, G859, G863, G5483

(Go back to: 1 John 1 General Notes; 1:9; 2:12)
God

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God's personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”

  NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: create, false god, God the Father, Holy Spirit, false god, Son of God, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 04:10
- Colossians 01:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 03:1-2
- Genesis 01:02
- Hosea 04:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 02:20
- Jeremiah 05:05
- John 01:03
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Lamentations 03:43
- Micah 04:05
- Philippians 02:06
- Proverbs 24:12
- Psalms 047:09
Examples from the Bible stories:

• 01:01 God created the universe and everything in it in six days.
• 01:15 God made man and woman in his own image.
• 05:03 “I am God Almighty. I will make a covenant with you.”
• 09:14 God said, “I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, ‘I AM has sent me to you.’ Also tell them, ‘I am Yahweh, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.’”
• 10:02 Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt’s gods.
• 16:01 The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true God.
• 22:07 You, my son, will be called the prophet of the Most High God who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!”
• 24:09 There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
• 25:07 “Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.”
• 28:01 “There is only one who is good, and that is God.”
• 49:09 But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
• 50:16 But some day God will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:


God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

Facts:

The terms “God the Father” and “heavenly Father” refer to Yahweh, the one true God. Another term with the same meaning is “Father,” used most often when Jesus was referring to him.

- God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
- God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
- Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

Translation Suggestions:

- In translating the phrase “God the Father,” it is best to translate “Father” with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
- The term “heavenly Father” could be translated by “Father who lives in heaven” or “Father God who lives in heaven” or “God our Father from heaven.”
- Usually “Father” is capitalized when it, refers to God.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: ancestor, God, heaven, Holy Spirit, Jesus, Son of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 08:4-6
- 1 John 02:01
- 1 John 02:23
- 1 John 03:01
- Colossians 01:1-3
- Ephesians 05:18-21
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 05:16
- Matthew 23:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 24:09 There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- 29:09 Then Jesus said, “This is what my heavenly Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- 37:09 Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- 40:07 Then Jesus cried out, “It is finished! Father, I give my spirit into your hands.”
- 42:10 “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- 43:08 “Jesus is now exalted to the right hand of God the Father.”
- 50:10 “Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H2, G3962
(Go back to: 1 John 1:2; 1:3; 2:1; 2:14; 2:15; 2:16; 2:22; 2:23; 2:24; 3:1; 4:14)
god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry

Definition:
A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

Translation Suggestions:
- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: God, Asherah, Baal, Molech, demon, image, kingdom, worship)

Bible References:
- Genesis 35:02
- Exodus 32:01
- Psalms 031:06
- Psalms 081:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 07:41
- Acts 07:43
- Acts 15:20
- Acts 19:27
- Romans 02:22
- Galatians 04:8-9
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Colossians 03:05
- 1 Thessalonians 01:09
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:02** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods.”
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many evil things.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false gods.

**Word Data:**


(Go back to: 1 John 5:21)
hand

Definition:
The word “hand” refers to the part of the body at the end of the arm. In the Bible, this term is associated with a person's power, control, or action, whether it be in reference to God or in reference to a human person.

Some of the various uses of the term “hand” include the following:

- To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.”
- To “save from the hand of” means to prevent someone from being harmed by another person.
- The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
- The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, the phrase “by the hand of the Lord” means that God caused something to happen.
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- The term “laying on of hands” can refer to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God's service, to pray for healing, or to ask God to bless that person.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that he himself wrote that part of the letter rather than speaking it to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as, “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: adversary, bless, captive, honor, power)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:25
- Acts 08:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 09:05
- Genesis 14:20
- John 03:35
- Mark 07:32
- Matthew 06:03

Word Data:


238 / 317
(Go back to: 1 John 1:1)
heart

Definition:
The term “heart” refers to the internal bodily organ that pumps blood throughout the body in people and animals. However, in the Bible the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person's thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with complete sincerity, commitment, or willingness, holding nothing back.
- The expression “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one's life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: hard)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:17
- 1 Thessalonians 02:04
- 2 Thessalonians 03:13-15
- Acts 08:22
- Acts 15:09
- Luke 08:15
- Mark 02:06
- Matthew 05:08
- Matthew 22:37

Word Data:


(See also: 1 John 3:17; 3:19; 3:20; 3:21)
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

• The Holy Spirit is also referred to as “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
• Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
• Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
• When God's Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God's will.
• The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

• This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
• Ways to translate this term could also include “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: holy, spirit, God, Lord, God the Father, Son of God, gift)

Bible References:

• 1 Samuel 10:10
• 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
• Acts 08:17
• Galatians 05:25
• Genesis 01:1-2
• Isaiah 63:10
• Job 33:04
• Matthew 12:31
• Matthew 28:18-19
• Psalms 051:10-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

• 01:01 But God's Spirit was there over the water.
• 24:08 When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, the Spirit of God appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
• 26:01 After overcoming Satan's temptations, Jesus returned in the power of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
• 26:03 Jesus read, “God has given me his Spirit so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed.”
• 42:10 “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
• 43:03 They were all filled with the Holy Spirit and they began to speak in other languages.
• 43:08 “And Jesus has sent the Holy Spirit just as he promised he would do. The Holy Spirit is causing the things that you are are now seeing and hearing.”
• 43:11 Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the Holy Spirit.”
• 45:01 He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of wisdom.
**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G40, G4151

*(Go back to: 1 John 2:20; 3:24; 4:2; 4:13; 5:6; 5:8)*
hope, hoped

Definition:

Hope is strongly desiring something to happen. Hope can imply either certainty or uncertainty regarding a future event.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” also has the meaning of “trust,” as in “my hope is in the Lord.” It refers to a sure expectation of receiving what God has promised his people.
- Sometimes the ULT translates the term in the original language as “confidence.” This happens mostly in the New Testament in situations where people who believe in Jesus as their Savior have the assurance (or confidence or hope) of receiving what God has promised.
- To have “no hope” means to have no expectation of something good happening. It means that it is actually very certain that it will not happen.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, the term to “hope” could also be translated as to “wish” or to “desire” or to “expect.”
- The expression “nothing to hope for” could be translated as “nothing to trust in” or “no expectation of anything good”
- To “have no hope” could be translated as “have no expectation of anything good” or “have no security” or “be sure that nothing good will happen.”
- The expression “have set your hopes on” could also be translated as “have put your confidence in” or “have been trusting in.”
- The phrase “I find hope in your Word” could also be translated as “I am confident that your Word is true” or “Your Word helps me trust in you” or “When I obey your Word, I am certain to be blessed.”
- Phrases such as “hope in” God could also be translated a, “trust in God” or “know for sure that God will do what he has promised” or “be certain that God is faithful.”

(See also: bless, confidence, good, obey, trust, word of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:14-15
- 1 Thessalonians 02:19
- Acts 24:14-16
- Acts 26:06
- Acts 27:20
- Colossians 01:05
- Job 11:20

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 John 3:3)
hour

Definition:
In addition to being used to refer to when or how long something took place, the term “hour” is also used in several figurative ways:

- Sometimes “hour” refers to a regular, scheduled time to do something, such as the “hour of prayer.”
- When the text says that the “hour had come” for Jesus to suffer and be put to death, this means that it was the appointed time for this to happen—the time that God had selected long ago.
- The term “hour” is also used to mean “at that moment” or “right then.”
- When the text talks about the “hour” being late, this means that it was late in the day, when the sun would soon be setting.

Translation Suggestions:

- When used figuratively, the term “hour” can be translated as “time” or “moment” or “appointed time.”
- The phrase “in that very hour” or “the same hour” could be translated as “at that moment” or “at that time” or “immediately” or “right then.”
- The expression “the hour was late” could be translated as “it was late in the day” or “it would soon be getting dark” or “it was late afternoon.”

(See also: hour)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:30
- Acts 10:30
- Mark 14:35

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G5610

(Go back to: 1 John 2:18)
**iniquity**

**Definition:**

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: sin, transgress, trespass)

**Bible References:**

- Daniel 09:13
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 44:16
- Habakkuk 02:12
- Matthew 13:41
- Matthew 23:27-28
- Micah 03:10

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H205, H1942, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5932, H5999, H7562, G92, G93, G458, G3892, G4189

(See also: 1 John 1:9; 5:17)
it is written

Definition:

The phrase “as it is written” or “what is written” occurs frequently in the New Testament and usually refers to commands or prophecies that were written in the Hebrew scriptures.

- Sometimes “as it is written” refers to what was written in the Law of Moses.
- Other times it is a quote from what one of the prophets wrote in the Old Testament.
- This could be translated “as it is written in the Law of Moses” or “as the prophets wrote long ago” or “what it says in God’s laws that Moses wrote down long ago”.
- Another option is to keep “It is written” and give a footnote that explains what this means.

(See also: command, law, prophet, word of God)

Bible References:

- 1 John 05:13-15
- Acts 13:29
- Exodus 32:15-16
- John 21:25
- Luke 03:4
- Mark 09:12
- Matthew 04:06
- Revelation 01:03

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3789, G1125

(Go back to: 1 John 5:13)
Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

Facts:

Jesus is God's Son. The name “Jesus” means “Yahweh saves.” The term “Christ” is a title that means “anointed one” and is another word for Messiah.

- The two names are often combined as “Jesus Christ” or “Christ Jesus.” These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah, who came to save people from being punished eternally for their sins.
- In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His mother was told by an angel to call him “Jesus” because he was destined to save people from their sins.
- Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many languages “Jesus” and “Christ” are spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," “Yesus Kristus”, and “Hesukristo” are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
- For the term “Christ,” some translators may prefer to use only some form of the term “Messiah” throughout.
- Also consider how these names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Christ, God, God the Father, high priest, kingdom of God, Mary, Savior, Son of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:11
- 1 John 02:02
- 1 John 04:15
- 1 Timothy 01:02
- 2 Peter 01:02
- 2 Thessalonians 02:15
- 2 Timothy 01:10
- Acts 02:23
- Acts 05:30
- Acts 10:36
- Hebrews 09:14
- Hebrews 10:22
- Luke 24:20
- Matthew 01:21
- Matthew 04:03
- Philippians 02:05
- Philippians 02:10
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 01:06

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 22:04 The angel said, “You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him Jesus and he will be the Messiah.”
- 23:02 “Name him Jesus (which means, ‘Yahweh saves’), because he will save the people from their sins.”
- 24:07 So John baptized him (Jesus), even though Jesus had never sinned.
- 24:09 There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
• 25:08 Jesus did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.
• 26:08 Then Jesus went throughout the region of Galilee, and large crowds came to him. They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and Jesus healed them.
• 31:03 Then Jesus finished praying and went to the disciples. He walked on top of the water across the lake toward their boat!
• 38:02 He (Judas) knew that the Jewish leaders denied that Jesus was the Messiah and that they were plotting to kill him.
• 40:08 Through his death, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
• 42:11 Then Jesus was taken up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight. Jesus sat down at the right hand of God to rule over all things.
• 50:17 Jesus and his people will live on the new earth, and he will reign forever over everything that exists. He will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death. Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

• Strong's: G2424, G5547

(Go back to: 1 John 1:3; 1:7; 2:1; 2:22; 3:23; 4:2; 4:3; 4:15; 5:1; 5:5; 5:6; 5:20)
joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing

Definition:

joy

The term “joy” refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

• A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
• God is the one who gives true joy to people.
• Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
• Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

rejoice

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

• This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
• It could be translated as “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
• When Mary said “my soul rejoices in God my Savior,” she meant “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

Translation Suggestions:

• The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
• The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or it could be translated “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
• A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
• A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
• A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” (See: metonymy)

Bible References:

• Nehemiah 08:10
• Psalm 048:02
• Isaiah 56:6-7
• Jeremiah 15:15-16
• Matthew 02:9-10
• Luke 15:07
• Luke 19:37-38
• John 03:29
• Acts 16:32-34
• Romans 05:1-2
• Romans 15:30-32
• Galatians 05:23
• Philippians 04:10-13
• 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
• 1 Thessalonians 05:16
• Philemon 01:4-7
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:07** “The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with joy.”
- **34:04** “The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with joy, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field.”
- **41:07** The women were full of fear and great joy. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 John 1:4)
judge, judgment

Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God's judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: decree, judge, judgment day, just, law, law)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:17
- 1 Kings 03:09
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 03:14
- James 02:04
- Luke 06:37
- Micah 03:9-11
- Psalm 054:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 19:16 The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- 21:08 A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and judges the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always judge honestly and make the right decisions.
- 39:04 The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, “We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?”
- 50:14 But God will judge everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.
Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 John 4:17)
**know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish**

**Definition:**

The term "know" and "knowledge" means generally to understand something or someone. It can also mean to be aware of a fact or to be familiar with a person. The expression "to make known" means to tell information.

- The term "knowledge" refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To "know about" God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To "know" God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God's will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To "know the Law" means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes "knowledge" is used as a synonym for "wisdom," which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The "knowledge of God" is sometimes used as a synonym for the "fear of Yahweh."

**Translation Suggestions**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as "distinguish." When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition "between."
- Some languages have two different words for “know,” one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as "be able to" or "have the skill to."
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 02:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 02:15
- 2 Peter 01:3-4
- Deuteronomy 04:39-40
- Genesis 19:05
- Luke 01:77

**Word Data:**


last day, latter days

Definition:

The term “last days” or “latter days” refers generally to the time period at the end of the current age.

- This time period will have an unknown duration.
- The “last days” are a time of judgment upon those who have turned away from God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “last days” can also be translated as “final days” or “end times.”
- In some contexts, this could be translated as “end of the world” or “when this world ends.”

(See also: day of the Lord, judge, turn, world)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 03:3-4
- Daniel 10:14-15
- Hebrews 01:02
- Isaiah 02:02
- James 05:03
- Jeremiah 23:19-20
- John 11:24-26
- Micah 04:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H319, H3117, G2078, G2250

(Go back to: 1 John 2 General Notes)
lawful, unlawful, not lawful, lawless, lawlessness

Definition:

The term “lawful” refers to something that is permitted to be done according to a law or other requirement. The opposite of this is “unlawful,” which simply means “not lawful.”

- In the Bible, something was “lawful” if it was permitted by God’s moral law, or by the Law of Moses and other Jewish laws. Something that was “unlawful” was “not permitted” by those laws.
- To do something “lawfully” means to do it “properly” or “in the right way.”
- Many of the things that the Jewish laws considered lawful or not lawful were not in agreement with God’s laws about loving others.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “lawful” could include “permitted” or “according to God’s law” or “following our laws” or “proper” or “fitting.”
- The phrase “Is it lawful?” could also be translated as “Do our laws allow?” or “Is that something our laws permit?”

The terms “unlawful” and “not lawful” are used to describe actions that break a law.

- In the New Testament, the term “unlawful” is not only used to refer to breaking God’s laws, but also often refers to breaking Jewish man-made laws.
- Over the years, the Jews added to the laws that God gave to them. The Jewish leaders would call something “unlawful” if it did not conform to their man-made laws.
- When Jesus and his disciples were picking grain on a Sabbath day, the Pharisees accused them of doing something “unlawful” because it was breaking the Jewish laws about not working on that day.
- When Peter stated that eating unclean foods was “unlawful” for him, he meant that if he ate those foods he would be breaking the laws God had given the Israelites about not eating certain foods.

The term “lawless” describes a person who does not obey laws or rules. When a country or group of people are in a state of “lawlessness,” there is widespread disobedience, rebellion, or immorality.

- A lawless person is rebellious and does not obey God’s laws.
- The apostle Paul wrote that in the last days there will be a “man of lawlessness,” or a “lawless one,” who will be influenced by Satan to do evil things.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term “unlawful” should be translated using a word or expression that means “not lawful” or “lawbreaking.”
- Other ways to translate “unlawful” could be “not permitted” or “not according to God’s law” or “not conforming to our laws.”
- The expression “against the law” has the same meaning as “unlawful.”
- The term “lawless” could also be translated as “rebellious” or “disobedient” or “law-defying.”
- The term “lawlessness” could be translated as “not obeying any laws” or “rebellion (against God’s laws).”
- The phrase “man of lawlessness” could be translated as “man who does not obey any laws” or “man who rebels against God's laws.”
- It is important to keep the concept of “law” in this term, if possible.
- Note that the term “unlawful” has a different meaning from this term.

(See also: law, law, Moses, Sabbath)

Bible References:

- Matthew 07:21-23
- Matthew 12:02
• Matthew 12:04
• Matthew 12:10
• Mark 03:04
• Luke 06:02
• Acts 02:23
• Acts 10:28
• Acts 22:25
• 2 Thessalonians 02:03
• Titus 02:14
• 1 John 03:4-6

Word Data:

• Strong's: H6530, G111, G113, G266, G458, G459, G1832, G3545

(Go back to: 1 John 3:4)
life, live, living, alive

Definition:

The term "life" refers to being physically alive as opposed to being physically dead.

1. Physical life

- A "life" can also refer to an individual person as in “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person's lifespan, as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive, as in “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

2. Eternal life

- A person has eternal life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- The opposite of eternal life is eternal death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives’ could be translated as “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about eternal life, the term “life” could be translated in the following ways: “eternal life” or “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: death, everlasting)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 01:03
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 02:07
- Genesis 07:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:02
- John 01:04
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 07:14
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed life into him.
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were living in the world.
- **08:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still alive, he was very happy.
- **17:09** However, toward the end of his [David's] life he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal life?"
- **35:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life."
- **44:05** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of life, but God raised him from the dead."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G198, G222, G227, G806, G590

(Go back to: 1 John 1:1; 1:2; 2:16; 2:25; 3:14; 3:15; 3:16; 4:9; 5:11; 5:12; 5:13; 5:16; 5:20)
light, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten

Definition:

There are several figurative uses of the term “light” in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth. (See: Metaphor)

- Jesus said, “I am the light of the world” to express that he brings God's true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to “walk in the light,” which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that “God is light” and in him there is no darkness at all.
- Light and darkness are complete opposites. Darkness is the absence of all light.
- Jesus said that he was “the light of the world” and that his followers should shine like lights in the world by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- “Walking in the light” represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

Translation Suggestions:

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms “light” and “darkness” even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, “walk as children of light” could be translated as, "live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight."
- Make sure that the translation of “light” does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: darkness, holy, righteous, true)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 John 02:08
- 2 Corinthians 04:06
- Acts 26:18
- Isaiah 02:05
- John 01:05
- Matthew 05:16
- Matthew 06:23
- Nehemiah 09:12-13
- Revelation 18:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H216, H217, H3313, H3974, H5051, H5094, H5105, H5216, H7837, G681, G796, G1645, G2985, G3088, G5338, G5457, G5458, G5460, G5462

(See back to: 1 John 1:5; 1:7; 2:8; 2:9; 2:10)
like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if

Definition:

The terms “like” and “likeness” refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

- The word “like” is also often used in a figurative expressions called a “simile” in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, “his clothes shined like the sun” and “the voice boomed like thunder.” (See: Simile)
- To “be like” or “sound like” or “look like” something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
- People were created in God’s “likeness,” that is, in his “image.” It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are “like” or “similar to” qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
- To have “the likeness of” something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.

Translation Suggestions

- In some contexts, the expression “the likeness of” could be translated as “what looked like” or “what appeared to be.”
- The expression “in the likeness of his death” could be translated as “sharing in the experience of his death” or “as if experiencing his death with him.”
- The expression “in the likeness of sinful flesh” could be translated as “being like a sinful human being” or to “be a human being.” Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
- “In his own likeness” could also be translated as to “be like him” or “having many of the same qualities that he has.”
- The expression “the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things” could be translated as “idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things.”

(See also: beast, flesh, image of God, image, perish)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 01:05
- Mark 08:24
- Matthew 17:02
- Matthew 18:03
- Psalms 073:05
- Revelation 01:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1823, H8403, H8544, G1503, G1504, G2509, G2531, G2596, G3664, G3665, G3666, G3667, G3668, G3669, G3697, G4833, G5108, G5613, G5615, G5616, G5618, G5619

(See also: beast, flesh, image of God, image, perish)

love, beloved

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for "love"—some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.
   - Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
   - When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
   - In the ULT, the word "love" refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.
   - This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
   - The term can also be used in such contexts as, “They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet.” This means that they “like very much” or “greatly desire” to do that.

3. The word “love” can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

Translation Suggestions:

• Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word “love” in the ULT refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
• Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, “devoted, faithful caring” or “care for unselfishly” or “love from God.” Make sure that the word used to translate God’s love can include giving up one’s own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
• Sometimes the English word “love” describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, “like very much” or “care for” or “have strong affection for.”
• In contexts where the word “love” is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by “strongly prefer” or “like very much” or “greatly desire.”
• Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
• Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: covenant, death, sacrifice, save, sin)

Bible References:

• 1 Corinthians 13:07
• 1 John 03:02
• 1 Thessalonians 04:10
• Galatians 05:23
• Genesis 29:18
• Isaiah 56:06
• Jeremiah 02:02
• John 03:16
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself."
- **33:08** "The thorny ground is a person who hears God's word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God."
- **36:05** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, “This is my Son whom I **love**.”
- **39:10** “Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me.”
- **47:01** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:01** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:03** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:04** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:07** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:09** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

Word Data:


lust, lustful, passions, desires

Definition:

Lust is a very strong desire, usually in the context of wanting something sinful or immoral. To lust is to have lust.

- In the Bible, “lust” usually referred to sexual desire for someone other than one’s own spouse.
- Sometimes this term was used in a figurative sense to refer to worshiping idols.
- Depending on the context, “lust” could be translated as “wrong desire” or “strong desire” or “wrongful sexual desire” or “strong immoral desire” or to “strongly desire to sin.”
- The phrase to “lust after” could be translated as to “wrongly desire” or to “think immorally about” or to “immorally desire.”

(See also: adultery, false god)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:16
- 2 Timothy 02:22
- Galatians 05:16
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Genesis 39:7-9
- Matthew 05:28

Word Data:


(See back to: 1 John 2:16; 2:17)
name

Definition:
The term “name” refers to the word by which a specific person or thing is called. In the Bible, however, the term "name" is used in several different ways to refer to several different concepts.

- In some contexts, “name” could refer to a person’s reputation, as in “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” could also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone could refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: metonymy)

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression “make a name for ourselves” could be translated “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression “call his name” could be translated as “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression “those who love your name” could be translated as “those who love you.”
- The expression “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See also: call)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:12
- 2 Timothy 02:19
- Acts 04:07
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 09:27
- Genesis 12:02
- Genesis 35:10
- Matthew 18:05

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2564, G3686, G3687, G5122

(See also: 1 John 2:12; 3:23; 5:13)
obey, obedient

Definition:
The term “obey” means to do what has been commanded by a person or law. The term “obedient” describes someone who obeys. Sometimes a command prohibits doing something, as in “do not steal.” In this case, to “obey” means not to steal.

- Usually the term “obey” is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority. For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate obey could include a word or phrase that means “do what is commanded” or “follow orders” or “do what God says to do.”
- The term “obedient” could be translated as “doing what was commanded” or “following orders” or “doing what God commands.”

(See also: citizen, command, disobey, kingdom, law)

Bible References:

- Acts 05:32
- Acts 06:7
- Genesis 28:6-7
- James 01:25
- James 02:10
- Luke 06:47
- Matthew 07:26
- Matthew 19:20-22
- Matthew 28:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:04** Noah **obeyed** God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **05:06** Again Abraham **obeyed** God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **05:10** “Because you (Abraham) have **obeyed** me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family”
- **05:10** But the Egyptians did not believe God or **obey** his commands.
- **13:07** If the people **obeyed** these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1697, H2388, H3349, H4928, H6213, H7181, H8085, H8086, H8104, G191, G3980, G3982, G5083, G5084, G5218, G5219, G5255, G5292, G5293, G5442

(Go back to: 1 John 2:3; 2:4; 2:5; 3:22; 3:24; 5:2; 5:3)
**perfect, perfected, perfection, complete**

**Definition:**

In the Bible, the term “perfect” means to be mature in our Christian life. To perfect something means to work at it until it is excellent and without flaws.

- Being perfect and mature means that a Christian is obedient, not sinless.
- The term “perfect” also has the meaning of being “complete” or “whole.”
- The New Testament Book of James states that persevering through trials will produce completeness and maturity in the believer.
- When Christians study the Bible and obey it, they will become more spiritually perfect and mature because they will be more like Christ in their character.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- This term could be translated as “without flaw” or “without error” or “flawless” or “without fault” or “not having any faults.”

**Bible References:**

- Hebrews 12:02
- James 03:02
- Matthew 05:46-48
- Psalms 019:7-8

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H3632, H3634, H4359, H8003, H8503, H8537, H8549, H8552, G199, G2675, G2676, G3647, G5046, G5047, G5048, G5050

*(Go back to: 1 John 2:5; 4:12; 4:17; 4:18)*
pray, prayer

Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: false god, forgive, praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:09
- Acts 08:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 04:04
- John 17:09
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 06:05 Isaac prayed for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- 13:12 But Moses prayed for them, and God listened to his prayer and did not destroy them.
- 19:08 Then the prophets of Baal prayed to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- 21:07 Priests also prayed to God for the people.
- 38:11 Jesus told his disciples to pray that they would not enter into temptation.
- 43:13 The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and prayed with each other.
- 49:18 God tells you to pray, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:


( Go back to: 1 John 5:16)
promise, promised

Definition:

When used as a verb, the term "promise" refers to the action of a person saying that he will do something in such way that he obligates himself to fulfill what he has said. When used as a noun, the term "promise" refers to the thing that a person obligates himself to do.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "promise" could be translated as "commitment" or "assurance" or "guarantee."
- To "promise to do something" could be translated as "assure someone that you will do something" or "commit to doing something."

(See also: covenant, oath, vow)

Bible References:

- Galatians 03:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:09
- James 01:12
- Numbers 30:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, “I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”
- **03:16** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his promise. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he promised and so would his people.
- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God's promise.
- **05:04** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of promise.”
- **08:15** The covenant promises that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob's twelve sons and their families.
- **17:14** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his promises.
- **50:01** Jesus promised he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his promise.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H562, H1696, H8569, G1843, G1860, G1861, G1862, G3670, G4279

(Go back to: 1 John 2:25)
propitiation

Definition:
The term “propitiation” refers to a sacrifice that is made to satisfy or fulfill the justice of God and to appease his wrath.

• The offering of the sacrificial blood of Jesus Christ is the propitiation to God for mankind's sins.
• Jesus' death on the cross appeased God's wrath against sin. This provided a way for God to look on people with favor and offer them eternal life.

Translation Suggestions:

• This term could be translated as “appeasement” or “causing God to forgive sins and grant favor to people.”
• The word “atonement” is close in meaning to “propitiation.” It is important to compare how these two terms are used.

(See also: atonement, everlasting, forgive, sacrifice)

Bible References:

• 1 John 02:02
• 1 John 04:10
• Romans 03:25-26

Word Data:

• Strong's: G2434, G2435

(Go back to: 1 John 2:2; 4:10)
punish, punished, punishment, unpunished

Definition:

The term “punish” means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term “punishment” refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person's punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions “go unpunished” and “leave unpunished” mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: just, repent, righteous, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:18
- 2 Thessalonians 01:09
- Acts 04:21
- Acts 07:59-60
- Genesis 04:15
- Luke 23:16
- Matthew 25:46

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:07** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.
- **16:02** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he punished them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **48:06** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the punishment for every sin that anyone has ever committed.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person's sin, and God's punishment passes over him.
- **49:09** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:11** Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be punished and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

Word Data:


(See also: just, repent, righteous, sin)
pure, purify, purification

Definition:

To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

• In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
• The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
• In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
• The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God’s forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

Translation Suggestions:

• The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
• A phrase such as “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
• The phrase “provided purification for sins” could be translated as “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
• Other ways to translate “purification” could include “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See also: atonement, clean, spirit)

Bible References:

• 1 Timothy 01:05
• Exodus 31:6-9
• Hebrews 09:13-15
• James 04:08
• Luke 02:22
• Revelation 14:04

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 John 3:3)
receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance

Definition:

The term “receive” generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To “receive” can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in “he received punishment for what he did.”
- There is also a special sense in which we can “receive” a person. For example, to “receive” guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To “receive the gift of the Holy Spirit” means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To “receive Jesus” means to accept God’s offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person “receives his sight” means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “receive” could be translated as “accept” or “welcome” or “experience” or “be given.”
- The expression “you will receive power” could be translated as “you will be given power” or “God will give you power” or “power will be given to you (by God)” or “God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you.”
- The phrase “received his sight” could be translated as “was able to see” or “became able to see again” or “was healed by God so that he was able to see.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, Jesus, lord, save)

Bible References:

- 1 John 05:09
- 1 Thessalonians 01:06
- 1 Thessalonians 04:01
- Acts 08:15
- Jeremiah 32:33
- Luke 09:05
- Malachi 03:10-12
- Psalms 049:14-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 21:13 The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- 45:05 As Stephen was dying, he cried out, “Jesus, receive my spirit.”
- 49:06 He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- 49:10 When Jesus died on the cross, he received your punishment.
- 49:13 God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3557, H3947, H6901, H6902, H8254, G308, G324, G353, G354, G568, G588, G618, G1183, G1209, G1523, G1653, G1926, G2865, G2983, G3028, G3335, G3336, G3549, G3858, G3880, G4327, G4355, G4356, G4687, G5264, G5562

(Go back to: 1 John 2:27; 3:22; 5:9)
reveal, revealed, revelation

Definition:

The term “reveal” means to cause something to be known. A “revelation” is something that has been made known.

- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul said that he received the gospel by “revelation from Jesus Christ,” he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- In the New Testament book “Revelation” is about God revealed events that will happen in the end times. He revealed them to the apostle John through visions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “reveal” could include “make known” or “disclose” or “show clearly.”
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate “revelation” could be “communication from God” or “things that God has revealed” or “teachings about God.” It is best to keep the meaning of “reveal” in the translation.
- The phrase “where there is no revelation” could be translated as “when God is not revealing himself to people” or “when God is not speaking to people” or “among people whom God has not communicating.”

(See also: good news, good news, dream, vision)

Bible References:

- Daniel 11:1-2
- Ephesians 03:05
- Galatians 01:12
- Lamentations 02:13-14
- Matthew 10:26
- Philippians 03:15
- Revelation 01:01

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H241, H1540, H1541, G601, G602, G5537

(Go back to: 1 John 1:2; 2:19; 2:28; 3:2; 3:5; 3:8; 3:10; 4:9)
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

Definition:

The term “righteousness” refers to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God’s teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God’s laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God’s rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: parallelism)

Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good things.
- The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
- Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God’s laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: evil, faithful, good, holy, integrity, just, law, law, obey, pure, righteous, sin, unlawful)
Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 01:08
- Psalms 037:30
- Psalms 049:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 02:06
- Matthew 06:01
- Acts 03:13-14
- Romans 01:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- Galatians 03:07
- Colossians 03:25
- 2 Thessalonians 02:10
- 2 Timothy 03:16
- 1 Peter 03:18-20
- 1 John 01:09
- 1 John 05:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 03:02 But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man, living among wicked people.
- 04:08 God declared that Abram was righteous because he believed in God's promise.
- 17:02 David was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- 23:01 Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a righteous man.
- 50:10 Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 John 1 General Notes; 1:9; 2:1; 2:29; 3:7; 3:10; 3:12)
Satan, devil, evil one

Facts:

Although the devil is a spirit being that God created, he rebelled against God and became God's enemy. The devil is also called “Satan” and “the evil one.”

- The devil hates God and all that God created because he wants to take the place of God and be worshiped as God.
- Satan tempts people to rebel against God.
- God sent his Son, Jesus, to rescue people from Satan's control.
- The name “Satan” means “adversary” or “enemy.”
- The word “devil” means “accuser.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “devil” could also be translated as “the accuser” or “the evil one” or “the king of evil spirits” or “the chief evil spirit.”
- “Satan” could be translated as “Opponent” or “Adversary” or some other name that shows that he is the devil.
- These terms should be translated differently from demon and evil spirit.
- Consider how these terms are translated in a local or national language.

(See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: demon, evil, kingdom of God, tempt)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:08
- 1 Thessalonians 02:17-20
- 1 Timothy 05:15
- Acts 13:10
- Job 01:08
- Mark 08:33
- Zechariah 03:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 21:01 The snake who deceived Eve was Satan. The promise meant that the Messiah who would come would defeat Satan completely.
- 25:06 Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- 25:08 Jesus did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.
- 33:06 So Jesus explained, “The seed is the word of God. The path is a person who hears God's word, but does not understand it, and the devil takes the word from him.”
- 38:07 After Judas took the bread, Satan entered into him.
- 48:04 God promised that one of Eve's descendants would crush Satan's head, and Satan would wound his heel. This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would raise him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- 49:15 God has taken you out of Satan's kingdom of darkness and put you into God's kingdom of light.
- 50:09 "The weeds represent the people who belong to the evil one. The enemy who planted the weeds represents the devil.”
• 50:10 “When the world ends, the angels will gather together all the people who belong to the devil and throw them into a raging fire, where they will cry and grind their teeth in terrible suffering.”
• 50:15 When Jesus returns, he will completely destroy Satan and his kingdom. He will throw Satan into hell where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H7700, H7854, H8163, G1139, G1140, G1141, G1142, G1228, G4190, G4566, G4567

(Go back to: 1 John 2:13; 2:14; 3:8; 3:10; 3:12; Notes; 5:18; 5:19)
save, saved, safe, salvation

Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm's way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”
- The term “salvation” could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God's saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God's rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: cross, deliver, punish, sin, Savior)

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 080:03
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 06:3-5
- Luke 02:30
- Luke 08:36-37
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 02:21
- Romans 01:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 06:17
- Philippians 01:28
- 1 Timothy 01:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2
Examples from the Bible stories:

• **09:08** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
• **11:02** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
• **12:05** Moses told the Israelites, “Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you.”
• **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
• **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
• **44:08** “You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!”
• **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, “What must I do to be **saved**?” Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**.”
• **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
• **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 John 3 General Notes; Notes)
Savior, savior

Facts:
The term “savior” refers to a person who saves or rescues others from danger. It can also refer to someone who gives strength to others or provides for them.

- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as Israel’s Savior because he often rescued them from their enemies, gave them strength, and provided them with what they needed to live.
- In the New Testament, “Savior” is used as a description or title for Jesus Christ because he saves people from being eternally punished for their sin. He also saves them from being controlled by their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, “Savior” should be translated with a word that is related to the words “save” and “salvation.”
- Ways to translate this term could include “the One who saves” or “God, who saves” or “who delivers from danger” or “who rescues from enemies” or “Jesus, the one who rescues (people) from sin.”

(See also: deliver, Jesus, save, save)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 04:10
- 2 Peter 02:20
- Acts 05:29-32
- Isaiah 60:15-16
- Luke 01:47
- Psalms 106:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3467, G4990

(Go back to: 1 John 4:14)
seed, semen

Definition:
A "seed" is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. However, in the Bible the term "seed" is used figuratively to mean several different things.

- The term "seed" is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these cells is called "semen."
- Related to this, “seed” is also used to refer to a person’s offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people’s hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term “seed” to refer to the Word of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for “seed” that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God's Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word “descendant” or “descendants” instead of “seed.” Some languages may have a word that means “children and grandchildren.”
- For a man or woman’s “seed,” consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: euphemism)

(See also: descendant, offspring)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:32
- Genesis 01:11
- Jeremiah 02:21
- Matthew 13:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G4615, G4687, G4690, G4701, G4703

(See back to: 1 John 3:9)
send, sent, send out

Definition:

To “send” is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To “send out” someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

- Often a person who is “sent out” has been appointed to do a specific task.
- Phrases like “send rain” or “send disaster” mean to “cause...to come.” This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
- The term “send” is also used in expressions such as to “send word” or to “send a message,” which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
- To “send” someone “with” something can mean to “give” that thing “to” someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
- Jesus frequently used the phrase “the one who sent me” to refer to God the Father, who “sent” him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as “the one who commis

(See also: appoint, redeem)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:33-34
- Acts 08:14-17
- John 20:21-23
- Matthew 09:37-38
- Matthew 10:05
- Matthew 10:40
- Matthew 21:1-3

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 John 4:9; 4:10; 4:14)
shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

Definition:
The term “shame” refers to the painful feeling of being disgraced or humiliated that a person feels when they do something that others consider dishonorable or improper.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something improper or dishonorable.
- The term “humiliate” means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced, usually publicly. The act of shaming someone is called “humiliation.”
- To “reproach” someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person’s character or behavior.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their actions so that they feel ashamed of themselves. The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- The term “disgraceful” can be used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it. When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame. For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- When God humbles someone, it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.

Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or dishonoring.”
- To “humiliate” could also be translated as to “shame” or to “cause to feel shame” or to “embarrass.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “humiliation” could include “shame” or “degrading” or “disgrace.”
- The word “reproach” could also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- To “reproach” could also be translated as to “rebuke” or to “accuse” or to “criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: dishonor, accuse, rebuke, false god, humble, Isaiah, worship)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:15-17
- 2 Kings 02:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 08:38
- Mark 12:4-5
- 1 Timothy 03:07
- Genesis 34:07
- Hebrews 11:26
- Lamentations 02:1-2
- Psalms 022:06
- Deuteronomy 21:14
- Ezra 09:05
- Proverbs 25:7-8

283 / 317
unfoldingWord® Translation Words

- Psalms 006:8-10
- Psalms 123:03
- 1 Timothy 05:7-8
- 1 Timothy 06:13-14
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Job 16:9-10
- Proverbs 18:03

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 John 2:28)
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:
The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God's will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don't know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God's will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn't keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:
- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God's will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebelling against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don't see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: disobey, evil, flesh, tax collector)

Bible References:
- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3
- 1 John 01:10
- 1 John 02:02
- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 03:19
- Daniel 09:24
- Genesis 04:07
- Hebrews 12:02
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 04:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31
- Romans 06:23
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, “I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their sin and planned to destroy them.
- **20:01** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both sinned against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's sin.
- **35:01** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other sinners who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **43:11** Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins.”
- **48:08** We all deserve to die for our sins!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to sin. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against sin.

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 John 1 General Notes; 1:7; 1:8; 1:9; 1:10; 2:1; 2:2; 2:12; 3:4; 3:5; 3:6; 3:8; 3:9; 4:10; 5:16; 5:17; 5:18)
Son of God, the Son

Facts:

The term “Son of God” refers to Jesus, the Word of God, who came into the world as a human being. He is also often referred to as “the Son.”

- The Son of God has the same nature as God the Father, and is fully God.
- God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit are all of one essence.
- Unlike human sons, the Son of God has always existed.
- In the beginning, the Son of God was active in creating the world, along with the Father and the Holy Spirit.

Because Jesus is God’s Son, he loves and obeys his Father, and his Father loves him.

Translation Suggestions:

- For the term “Son of God,” it is best to translate “Son” with the same word the language would naturally use to refer to a human son.
- Make sure the word used to translate “son” fits with the word used to translate “father” and that these words are the most natural ones used to express a true father-son relationship in the project language.
- Using a capital letter to begin “Son” may help show that this is talking about God.
- The phrase “the Son” is a shortened form of “the Son of God,” especially when it occurs in the same context as “the Father.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Christ, ancestor, God, God the Father, Holy Spirit, Jesus, son, sons of God)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:10  
- Acts 09:20  
- Colossians 01:17  
- Galatians 02:20  
- Hebrews 04:14  
- John 03:18  
- Luke 10:22  
- Matthew 11:27  
- Revelation 02:18  
- Romans 08:29

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:05** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the *Son of God.*”
- **24:09** God had told John, “The Holy Spirit will come down and rest on someone you baptize. That person is the *Son of God.*”
- **31:08** The disciples were amazed. They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, “Truly, you are the *Son of God.*”
- **37:05** Martha answered, “Yes, Master! I believe you are the Messiah, the *Son of God.*”
- **42:10** So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the *Son,* and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the *Son of God!*”
- **49:09** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only *Son* so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
Word Data:

- Strong's: H426, H430, H1121, H1247, G2316, G5207

spirit, spiritual

Definition:

The term "spirit" refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. "Spirit" can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term "spirit" can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person's spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term "spiritual" describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, "spiritual food" refers to God's teachings, which give nourishment to a person's spirit, and "spiritual wisdom" refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term "spirit of" can also mean "having the characteristics of," such as in "spirit of wisdom" or "in the spirit of Elijah."
- Examples of "spirit" as an attitude or emotion would include "spirit of fear" and "spirit of jealousy."

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate "spirit" might include "non-physical being" or "inside part" or "inner being."
- In some contexts, the term "spirit" could be translated as "evil spirit" or "evil spirit being."
- Sometimes the term "spirit" is used to express the feelings of a person, as in "my spirit was grieved in my inmost being." This could also be translated as "I felt grieved in my spirit" or "I felt deeply grieved."
- The phrase "spirit of" could be translated as "character of" or "influence of" or "attitude of" or "thinking (that is) characterized by."
- Depending on the context, "spiritual" could be translated as "non-physical" or "from the Holy Spirit" or "God's" or "part of the non-physical world."
- The phrase "spiritual maturity" could be translated as "godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit."
- The term "spiritual gift" could be translated as "special ability that the Holy Spirit gives"

(See also: angel, demon, Holy Spirit, soul)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- 1 John 04:03
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23
- Acts 05:09
- Colossians 01:09
- Ephesians 04:23
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Isaiah 04:04
- Mark 01:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 01:27
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:03** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves *spiritually*, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, “It is finished! Father, I give my *spirit* into your hands.” Then he bowed his head and gave up his *spirit*.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, “Jesus, receive my *spirit,*”
- **48:07** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a *spiritual* descendant of Abraham.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G5326, G5427

(Go back to: 1 John 4:1; 4:2; 4:3; 4:6)
strength, strengthen, strong

Facts:
The term “strength” refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To “strengthen” someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has “strength of will” if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his “strength” because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being “strengthened,” people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

Translation Suggestions
- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
  - “puts strength on me like a belt” means “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
  - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
  - “will renew their strength” means “will become stronger again.”
  - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
  - “strengthen the wall” means “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
  - “I will strengthen you” means “I will cause you to be strong”
  - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
  - “the rock of your strength” means “the faithful one who makes you strong”
  - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
  - “of little strength” means “not very strong” or “weak.”
  - “with all my strength” means “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: faithful, persevere, right hand, save)

Bible References:
- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 02:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 021:01

Word Data:
stumbling block, stone of stumbling

Definition:
The term “stumbling block” or “stone of stumbling” refers to a physical object that causes a person to trip and fall.

- A figurative stumbling block is anything that causes a person to fail in a moral or spiritual sense.
- Also figuratively, a “stumbling block” or “stone of stumbling” can be something that prevents someone from having faith in Jesus or that causes someone to not grow spiritually.
- Often it is sin that is like a stumbling block to oneself or to others.
- Sometimes God places a stumbling block in the way of people who are rebelling against him.

Translation Suggestions:

- If a language has a term for an object that triggers a trap, that word could be used to translate this term.
- This term could also be translated as “stone that causes stumbling” or “something that causes someone to not believe” or “obstacle that causes doubt” or “obstacle to faith” or “something that causes someone to sin.”

(See also: stumble, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 01:23
- Galatians 05:11
- Matthew 05:29-30
- Matthew 16:23
- Romans 09:33

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4383, G3037, G4349, G4625

(Go back to: 1 John 2:10)
teach, teaching, untaught

Definition:
To “teach” someone is to tell him something he doesn't already know. It can also mean to “provide information” in general, with no reference to the person who is learning. Usually the information is given in a formal or systematic way. A person's “teaching” is or his “teachings” are what he has taught.

- A “teacher” is someone who teaches. The past action of “teach” is “taught.”
- When Jesus was teaching, he was explaining things about God and his kingdom.
- Jesus' disciples called him “Teacher” as a respectful form of address for someone who taught people about God.
- The information that is being taught can be shown or spoken.
- The term ”doctrine” refers to a set of teachings from God about himself as well as God's instructions about how to live. This could also be translated as “teachings from God” or “what God teaches us.”
- The phrase “what you have been taught” could also be translated as, “what these people have taught you” or “what God has taught you,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate “teach” could include “tell” or “explain” or “instruct.”
- Often this term can be translated as “teaching people about God.”

(See also: instruct, teacher, word of God)

Bible References:
- 1 Timothy 01:03
- Acts 02:40-42
- John 07:14
- Luke 04:31
- Matthew 04:23
- Psalms 032:08

Word Data:

(Go back to: 1 John 2:27)
test, tested, testing, testing in the fire

Definition:

The term “test” refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person's strengths and weaknesses.

• God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
• God sometimes uses tests to expose people's sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
• Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
• To “put to the test” can mean, “challenge something or someone to prove its value.”
• In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
• Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

Translation Suggestions:

• The term to “test” could also be translated as, to “challenge” or to “cause to experience difficulties” or to “prove.”
• Ways to translate “a test” could be, “a challenge” or “a difficult experience.”
• To “put to the test” could be translated as to “test” or to “set up a challenge” or to “force to prove oneself.”
• In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, “trying to force God to prove his love.”
• In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term “test” can mean “tempt.”

(See also: tempt)

Bible References:

• 1 John 04:01
• 1 Thessalonians 05:21
• Acts 15:10
• Genesis 22:01
• Isaiah 07:13
• James 01:12
• Lamentations 03:40-43
• Malachi 03:10
• Philippians 01:10
• Psalm 026:02

Word Data:

• Strong's: H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G1242, G1263, G1303, G1382, G1957, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3984, G4303, G4451, G4828, G6020

(Go back to: 1 John 4:1)
testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness

Definition:

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To “witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as, “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as, to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as, “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: ark of the covenant, guilt, judge, prophet, testimony, true)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 06:03
- Matthew 26:60
- Mark 01:44
- John 01:07
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:02** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many false witnesses who lied about him.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, “We do not need any more witnesses. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?”
- **42:08** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are witnesses of these things.”
- **43:07** “We are witnesses to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G267, G1263, G1957, G2649, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3144, G4303, G4828, G4901, G5575, G5576, G5577, G6020

(Go back to: 1 John 1:2; 4:14; 5:6; 5:7; 5:9; 5:10; 5:11)
tongue, language

Definition:

The term "tongue" refers to the organ inside a person's mouth that is used to speak. The term is often used figuratively to mean "language" or "speaking." There are also several other figurative meanings as well.

- In the Bible, the most common figurative meaning for this term is "language" or "speech."
- Sometimes "tongue" may refer to a human language spoken by a certain people group.
- Other times it refers to a supernatural language that the Holy Spirit gives believers in Christ as one of the "gifts of the Spirit."
- In the book of Acts, the expression "tongues" of fire refers to "flames" of fire, presumably shaped like tongues.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "tongue" can be translated as "language" or "supernatural language." If it is not clear which one it is referring to, it is better to translate it as "language."
- When referring to fire, this term could be translated as "flames."
- The expression "my tongue rejoices" could be translated as "I rejoice and praise God" or "I am joyfully praising God."
- The phrase, "tongue that lies" could be translated as "person who tells lies" or "people who lie."
- Phrases such as "with their tongues" could be translated as "with what they say" or "by their words."

(See also: gift, Holy Spirit, joy, praise, rejoice, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:10
- 1 John 03:18
- 2 Samuel 23:02
- Acts 02:26
- Ezekiel 36:03
- Philippians 02:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3956, G1100, G1258, G2084

(See back to: 1 John 3:18)
true, truth

Definition:
The term “truth” refers to facts, events, and statements that correspond with reality. True facts describe the universe as it really exists. True events are events that actually happened. True statements are statements that are not false according the real world.

- "True" things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- "Truth" means understandings, beliefs, facts, or statements that are true.
- To say that a prophecy “came true” or “will come true” mean that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- In the Bible the concept of "truth" includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God's truth in the words that he spoke.
- The Bible is truth. It teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

Translation Suggestions:
- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term “true” could also be translated by “real” or “factual” or “correct” or “right” or “certain” or “genuine.”
- Ways to translate the term “truth” could include “what is true” or “fact” or “certainty” or “principle.”
- The expression “come true” could also be translated as “actually happen” or “be fulfilled” or “happen as predicted.”
- The expression “tell the truth” or “speak the truth” could also be translated as “say what is true” or “tell what really happened” or “say things that are reliable.”
- To “accept the truth” could be translated as “believe what is true about God.”
- In an expression such as “worship God in spirit and in truth,” the expression “in truth” could also be translated by “faithfully obeying what God has taught us.”

(See also: believe, faithful, fulfill, obey, prophet, understand)

Bible References:
- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 John 02:08
- 3 John 01:08
- Acts 26:24-26
- Colossians 01:06
- Genesis 47:29-31
- James 01:18
- James 03:14
- James 05:19
- Jeremiah 04:02
- John 01:9
- John 01:16-18
- John 01:51
- John 03:31-33
- Joshua 07:19-21
- Lamentations 05:19-22
- Matthew 08:10
- Matthew 12:17
- Psalm 026:1-3
- Revelation 01:19-20

299 / 317
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** The snake responded to the woman, “That is not true! You will not die.”
- **14:06** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, “It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!”
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **31:08** They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, “Truly, you are the Son of God.”
- **39:10** “I have come to earth to tell the truth about God. Everyone who loves the truth listens to me.” Pilate said, “What is truth?”

Word Data:


understand, understanding, thinking

Definition:

The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
- Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: believe, know, wise)

Bible References:

- Job 34:16-17
- Luke 02:47
- Luke 08:10
- Matthew 13:12
- Matthew 13:14
- Proverbs 03:05

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 John 5:20)
walk, walked

Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God's commands or God's ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God's commands” could be translated by “live by God's commands” or “obey God's commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as, “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, honor)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Kings 02:04
- Colossians 02:07
- Galatians 05:25
- Genesis 17:01
- Isaiah 02:05
- Jeremiah 13:10
- Micah 04:02

Word Data:


(Go back to: 1 John 1:6; 1:7; 2:6; 2:11)
water

Definition:

In addition to its primary meaning, “water” also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

- The term “waters” refers to bodies of water or many sources of water. It can also be a general reference for a large amount of water.
- A figurative use of “waters” refers to great distress, difficulties, and suffering. For example, God promises that when we “go through the waters” he will be with us.
- The phrase “many waters” emphasizes how great the difficulties are.
- To “water” livestock and other animals means to “provide water for” them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as the spring or fountain of “living waters” for his people. This means he is the source of spiritual power and refreshment.
- In the New Testament, Jesus used the phrase “living water” to refer to the Holy Spirit working in a person to transform and bring new life.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase, “draw water” could be translated as “pull water up from a well with a bucket.”
- “Streams of living water will flow from them” could be translated as “the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them them like streams of water.” Instead of “blessings” the term “gifts” or “fruits” or “godly character” could be used.
- When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase “living water” could be translated as “water that gives life” or “lifegiving water.” In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
- Depending on the context, the term “waters” or “many waters” could be translated as “great suffering (that surrounds you like water)” or “overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)” or “large amounts of water.”

(See also: life, spirit, Holy Spirit, power)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:36-38
- Exodus 14:21
- John 04:10
- John 04:14
- John 04:15
- Matthew 14:28-30

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2222, H4325, H4529, H4857, H7301, H7783, H8248, G504, G4215, G4222, G5202, G5204

(See also: life, spirit, Holy Spirit, power)
will of God

Definition:
The “will of God” refers to God's desires and plans.

- God's will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.
- It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
- The term to “will” means to “determine” or to “desire.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The “will of God” could also be translated as “what God desires” or “what God has planned” or “God's purpose” or “what is pleasing to God.”

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:15-17
- 1 Thessalonians 04:3-6
- Colossians 04:12-14
- Ephesians 01:1-2
- John 05:30-32
- Mark 03:33-35
- Matthew 06:8-10
- Psalms 103:21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6310, H6634, H7522, G1012, G1013, G2307, G2308, G2309, G2596

(Go back to: 1 John 2:17; 5:14)
word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God's message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God's word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

The term “word of truth” is another way of referring to “God's word,” which is his message or teaching. It does not refer to just one word.

- God's word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation, and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
- This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “the message of Yahweh” or “God's message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God's words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone and it refers to God's word, it could be translated as “the message” or “God's word” or “the teachings.” Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.
- When the Bible refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Truth.”
- “Word of truth” could be translated as “God's true message” or “God's word, which is true.”
- It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: prophet, true, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:01
- 1 Kings 13:01
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 08:11
- John 05:39
- Acts 06:02
- Acts 12:24
- Romans 01:02
- 2 Corinthians 06:07
- Ephesians 01:13
- 2 Timothy 03:16
Examples from the Bible stories:

- 25:07 In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.'
- 33:06 So Jesus explained, "The seed is the word of God.
- 42:03 Then Jesus explained to them what God's word says about the Messiah.
- 42:07 Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in God's word must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand God's word.
- 45:10 Philip also used other scriptures to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- 48:12 But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the Word of God.
- 49:18 God tells you to pray, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H561, H565, H1697, H3068, G3056, G4487
work, works, deeds

Definition:

The term “work” refers generally either to the action of expending effort in order to accomplish something, or to the result of that action. The term "works" refers generally to actions as a whole (that is, things that have been done or that need to be done).

- In the Bible, these terms are commonly used both in reference to God and humans.
- When used in reference to God, the term "work" in the Bible often refers to God's action of creating the universe or saving his people (either from enemies, from sin, or both).
- God's works refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place.
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "works" could be "deeds" or "actions" or "things that are done."
- God's "works" or "deeds" or the "work of his hands" could also be translated as "miracles" or "mighty acts" or "things that God does."
- The expression "the work of God" could be translated as "the things that God is doing" or "the miracles God does" or "everything that God has accomplished."
- The term "work" can just be the singular of "works" as in "every good work" or "every good deed."
- When work is done for God or others, it can be translated as "service" or "ministry."

(See also: fruit, Holy Spirit, miracle)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:12
- Acts 02:8-11
- Daniel 04:37
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Galatians 02:15-16
- James 02:17
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Micah 02:07
- Romans 03:28
- Titus 03:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4566, H4567, H4611, H4659, H5949, G2041

(Go back to: 1 John 3:8; 3:12; 3:18)
world, worldly

Definition:

The term “world” usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term “worldly” describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

• In its most general sense, the term “world” refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
• In many contexts, “world” actually means “people in the world.”
• Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
• The apostles also used “world” to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
• People and things characterized by these values are said to be “worldly.”

Translation Suggestions:

• Depending on the context, “world” could also be translated as “universe” or “people of this world” or “corrupt things in the world” or “evil attitudes of people in the world.”
• The phrase “all the world” often means “many people” and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, “all the world came to Egypt” could be translated as “many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt” or “people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there.”
• Another way to translate “all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census” would be “many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went...”
• Depending on the context, the term “worldly” could be translated as, “evil” or “sinful” or “selfish” or “ungodly” or “corrupt” or “influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world.”
• The phrase “saying these things in the world” can be translated as “saying these things to the people of the world.”
• In other contexts, “in the world” could also be translated as “living among the people of the world” or “living among ungodly people.”

(See also: corrupt, heaven, Rome, godly)

Bible References:

• 1 John 02:15
• 1 John 04:05
• 1 John 05:05
• John 01:29
• Matthew 13:36-39

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H776, H2309, H2465, H5769, H8398, G1093, G2886, G2889, G3625

(Go back to: 1 John 2:2; 2:15; 2:16; 2:17; 3:1; 3:13; 3:17; 4:1; 4:3; 4:4; 4:5; 4:9; 4:14; 4:17; 5:4; 5:5; 5:19)
Contributors

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community
Aaron Fenlason
Abner Bauman
Adam Van Goor
Alan Bird
Alan Borkenhagen
Alfred Van Dellen
Alice Wright
Allen Bair
Allyson Presswood Nance
Amanda Adams
Andrew Belcher
Andrew Johnson
Andrew Rice
Angelo Palo
Anita Moreau
April Linton
Aurora Lee
Barbara Summers
Barbara White
Becky Hancock
Beryl Carpenter
Bethany Fenlason
Betty Forbes
Bianca Elliott
Bill Cleveland
Bill Pruett
Bob Britting
Bram van den Heuvel
Brian Metzger
Bruce Bridges
Bruce Collier
Bruce Smith
Caleb Worgess
Carlyle Kilmore
Carol Pace
Carol Heim
Caroline Crawford
Caroline Fleming
Caroline S Wong
Carol Lee
Carol Moyer
Carolyn Lafferty
Catherine C Newton
Charisee Jackson
Charlotte Gibson
Charlotte Hobbs
Lloyd Box
Luis Keelin
Madeline Kilmore
Maggie D Paul
Marc Nelson
Mardi Welo
Margo Hoffman
Marilyn Cook
Marjean Swann
Marjorie Francis
Mark Albertini
Mark Chapman
Mark Thomas
Marselene Norton
Mary Jane Davis
Mary Jean Stout
Mary Landon
Mary Scarborough
Megan Kidwell
Melissa Roe
Merton Dibble
Meseret Abraham-Zemed
Michael Bush
Michael Connor
Michael Francis
Michael Geurink
Mike Tisdell
Mickey White
Miel Horrilleno
Monique Greer
Morgan Mellette
Morris Anderson
Nancy C. Naughton
Nancy Neu
Nancy VanCott
Neal Snook
Nicholas Scovil
Nick Dettman
Nils Friberg
Noah Crabtree
Pamela B Johnston
Pamela Nungesser
Pamela Roberts
Pam Gullifer
Pat Ankney
Pat Giddens
Patricia Brougher
Patricia Carson
Patricia Cleveland
Patricia Foster
Patricia Middlebrooks
Paul Mellema
Paula Carlson
Paula Oestreicher
Paul Holloway
Paul Nungesser
Peggy Anderson
Peggyrose Swartzentruber
Peter Polloni
Phillip Harms
Phyllis Mortensen
Priscilla Enggren
Rachel Agheyisi
Rachel Ropp
Raif Turner
Ray Puen
Reina Y Mora
Rene Bahrenfuss
Renee Triplett
Rhonda Bartels
Richard Beatty
Richard Moreau
Richard Rutter
Richard Stevens
Rick Keaton
Robby Little
Robert W Johnson
Rochelle Hook
Rodney White
Rolaine Franz
Ronald D Hook
Rosario Baria
Roxann Carey
Roxanne Pittard
Ruben Michael Garay
Russell Isham
Russ Perry
Ruth Calo
Ruth E Withee
Ruth Montgomery
Ryan Blizek
Sam Todd
Samuel Njunguna
Sandy Anderson
Sandy Blanes
Sara Giesmann
Sara Van Cott (Barnes)
Sharon Johnson
Sharon Peterson
Sharon Shortess
Shelly Harms
Sherie Nelson
Sherman Sebastien
Sherry Mosher
Stacey Swanson
Steve Gibbs
Steve Mercier
Susan Langohr
Susan Quigley
Susan Snook
Suzanne Richards
Sylvia Thomas
Sze Suze Lau
Tabitha Price
Tammy L Enns
Tammy White
Teresa Everett-Leone
Teresa Linn
Terri Collins
Theresa Baker
Thomas Jopling
Thomas Nickell
Thomas Warren
Tim Coleman
Tim Ingram
Tim Linn
Tim Lovestrand
Tim Mentink
Tom Penry
Tom William Warren
Toni Shuma
Tracie Pogue
Tricia Coffman
Vicki Ivester
Victoria G DeKraker
Victor M Prieto
Vivian Kamph
Vivian Richardson
Ward Pyles
Warren Blaisdell
Wayne Homer
Wendy Coleman
Wendy Colon
Wilbur Zirk
Wil Gipson
William Carson
William Cline
William Dickerson
William Smitherman
William Wilder
Yvonne Tallent

**unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors**

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
David Trombold, M. Div.
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
David Trombold, M. Div.
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
George “Drew” Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Hendrik “Henry” de Vries
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Larry Sallee, Th,M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics
Bev Staley
Carol Brinneman
Jody Garcia
Kara Anderson
Kim Puterbaugh
Lizz Carlton
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors

Andrew Belcher
David Book
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Lizz Carlton
Jan Zanutto
Matthew Latham
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Richard Joki
Door43 World Missions Community